

# Salesforce CRM Admin Cookbook

Over 40 recipes to make effective use of Salesforce CRM with the use of hidden features, advanced user interface techniques, and real-world solutions





# Salesforce CRM Admin Cookbook

Over 40 recipes to make effective use of Salesforce CRM with the use of hidden features, advanced user interface techniques, and real-world solutions

**Paul Goodey** 



**BIRMINGHAM - MUMBAI** 

## Salesforce CRM Admin Cookbook

Copyright © 2013 Packt Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author, nor Packt Publishing, and its dealers and distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by this book.

Packt Publishing has endeavored to provide trademark information about all of the companies and products mentioned in this book by the appropriate use of capitals. However, Packt Publishing cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.

First published: March 2013

Production Reference: 1180313

Published by Packt Publishing Ltd. Livery Place 35 Livery Street Birmingham B3 2PB, UK.

ISBN 978-1-84968-424-8

www.packtpub.com

Cover Image by Artie Ng (artherng@yahoo.com.au)

## **Credits**

Author Paul Goodey Project Coordinator Leena Purkait

Reviewers Keir Bowden Veturi JV Subramanyeswari

Acquisition Editor Pramila Balan

Lead Technical Editor Azharuddin Sheikh

Technical Editors Vrinda Amberkar Jalasha D'costa Proofreaders Stephen Silk Bernadette Watkins

Indexer Monica Ajmera Mehta

Production Coordinators Aparna Bhagat Arvindkumar Gupta

Cover Work Aparna Bhagat

## **About the Author**

**Paul Goodey** is the author of Salesforce CRM: The Definitive Admin Handbook by Packt Publishing.

He has over 15 years of experience in developing web technology solutions for companies of all sizes across a variety of industries, and has been building solutions with Salesforce CRM since 2006.

Paul has enjoyed a variety of roles while working with Salesforce CRM, having worked as a System Administrator, Developer, Business Analyst and Consultant to provide solutions for both in-house and consultancy-based end users.

Based in the UK, near London, Paul's professional qualifications include Salesforce.com Certified Developer DEV-401. In his spare time, he is a keen runner, having run several marathons and half-marathons since 2001.

Paul is a keen and active member of the salesforce.com administrator and developer online community and can be found at LinkedIn at http://www.linkedin.com/in/paulgoodey.

## Acknowledgement

Writing this book has been fun and I have enjoyed the time I have spent working on the chapters. My family has been very supportive, as well as being a useful springboard for some of the ideas; it is only with their support and patience that I have been able to complete my part of this endeavor.

Many other people have helped in the creation of the book and I am grateful to them all. Here's my attempt to provide acknowledgment where it is rightly due.

First I'd like to thank the heroes at salesforce.com for providing such an amazing product. Salesforce CRM is one of the very few business applications that is so easy and fun to work with. The application just goes from strength to strength with each new release and the amount of innovation, new feature development, and added business value that it brings is simply outstanding.

Next I would very much like to thank the team at Packt Publishing who have successfully orchestrated the completed work. From the time when I was first approached, to the time of editing and coordinating the final reviews, the team has been extremely supportive and highly professional throughout the writing process.

I would like to thank all the many people who have contributed with ideas and code recipes. Instead of trying to name them all and risk not mentioning others, I would like to thank in general all the salesforce.com employees, professionals, and keen enthusiasts who help make the salesforce.com community such a productive and collaborative environment.

If you haven't participated in the salesforce.com online user communities such as: success. salesforce.com (where you can post questions or ideas); developer.force.com; LinkedIn salesforce.com user groups; and Twitter (look out for #salesforce and #askforce), I would strongly recommend them as they are a truly valuable place to exchange information.

Finally, I would like to thank YOU for purchasing the book. I sincerely hope you find it as enjoyable and useful to read as it has been to write!

## **About the Reviewers**

A 25-year veteran of the IT industry, **Keir Bowden** has been working with Salesforce and the Force.com platform since late 2008 and holds all Salesforce.com certifications from Administrator through to Technical Architect. He is also a two-time Force.com MVP, frequent blogger on Apex and Visualforce solutions, and speaker at events such as Dreamforce and Cloudstock.

Keir is the Chief Technical Officer of BrightGen, a Salesforce.com Platinum Cloud Alliance Partner in the United Kingdom.

**Sree** (aka **Veturi JV Subramanyeswari**) is currently working as a Solution Architect at a well-known software consulting MNC in India. Prior to joining this company, she served few Indian MNCs, many startups, and R&D sectors in various roles such as programmer, tech lead, research assistant, architect, and so on. She has more than eight years of experience in web technologies covering media and entertainment, publishing, healthcare, enterprise architecture, manufacturing, public sector, defense communication, and gaming. She is also a well-known speaker who delivers talks on Drupal, Open Source, PHP, and Women in Technology, among other topics.

Sree has reviewed other tech books including:

- DevOps
- Twitter Bootstrap
- Drupal 7 Multi Sites Configuration
- Building Powerful and Robust Websites with Drupal 6
- Drupal 6 Module development
- PHP Team Development
- ► Drupal-6-site-blueprints
- Drupal 6 Attachment Views
- ► Drupal E-Commerce with Ubercart 2.x
- Drupal 7: First Look
- Twitter bootstrap
- Drupal SEO
- and many more

I would like to thank my family and friends who supported me in completing my reviews on time with good quality.

## www.PacktPub.com

## Support files, eBooks, discount offers, and more

You might want to visit www.PacktPub.com for support files and downloads related to your book.

Did you know that Packt offers eBook versions of every book published, with PDF and ePub files available? You can upgrade to the eBook version at www.PacktPub.com and as a print book customer, you are entitled to a discount on the eBook copy. Get in touch with us at service@packtpub.com for more details.

At www.PacktPub.com, you can also read a collection of free technical articles, sign up for a range of free newsletters and receive exclusive discounts and offers on Packt books and eBooks.



http://PacktLib.PacktPub.com

Do you need instant solutions to your IT questions? PacktLib is Packt's online digital book library. Here, you can access, read, and search across Packt's entire library of books.

### Why subscribe?

- Fully searchable across every book published by Packt
- Copy and paste, print and bookmark content
- On demand and accessible via web browser

### Free access for Packt account holders

If you have an account with Packt at www.PacktPub.com, you can use this to access PacktLib today and view nine entirely free books. Simply use your login credentials for immediate access.

### Instant updates on new Packt books

Get notified! Find out when new books are published by following @PacktEnterprise on Twitter, or the *Packt Enterprise* Facebook page.

# **Table of Contents**

Preface	1
Chapter 1: Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links	5
Introduction	5
Creating a Personal Setup link using the standard Custom Links	
on the sidebar	7
Using Custom Links to open Training in a new window from the sidebar	11
Creating a news-ticker message on the home page	16
Automatically collapsing Chatter feeds on the home page	20
Removing Chatter feeds on the home page	25
Adding a Send An Email button on the home page	29
Showing Opportunity Sales Stages descriptions on the home page	34
Chapter 2: Advanced User Interface	<u>43</u>
Introduction	43
Displaying Case Priority flags using a formula field and	
salesforce.com images	44
Building an Account Revenue indicator using a formula field	
and custom images	46
Creating a clutter-free Account tab using Visualforce	54
Showing a tabbed Account Detail page using Visualforce	57
Rendering an Account credit score graphically using JavaScript, CSS,	62
and Visualforce	62
Presenting an Account credit score graphically using a	
Google image chart	66
Chapter 3: Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features	75
Introduction	75
Extending the year range to 2025 on calendar pop ups for	
all date fields in Salesforce	76

Table of Contents	
Populating a historic year range from 1920 on calendar pop ups	
for all date fields in Salesforce	82
Creating a custom Log A Call button from accounts with	
prepopulated fields	89
Presenting an integrated view of cases on the home page	94
Removing the "discover what's new in this release" button from	-
the home page	99
Chapter 4: Automating Salesforce CRM	105
Introduction	105
Deriving year and month values from the opportunity close date	
using a formula	106
Calculating the week number for the opportunity close date	
using a formula	108
Creating an opportunity close date e-mail alert using workflow	111
Setting a default opportunity name using a field update workflow	122
Generating a default opportunity close date using a field	
update workflow	129
Chapter 5: Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM	137
Introduction	137
Stopping non-system administrators from changing account names	
with a validation rule	138
Enforcing the use of two-letter account country codes using	
a validation rule	140
Validating if US zip codes are well formed using a validation	
rule with REGEX	143
Validating if UK postcodes are well formed using a validation	
rule with REGEX	145
Creating a mandatory Reason Lost field for lost opportunities	
using a validation rule	148
Chapter 6: Implementing Approval Processes	<u>153</u>
Introduction	153
Creating an e-mail template for use with approval assignments	154
Setting up a user to be associated with an approval process	156
Building an opportunity approval process for deals greater	
than USD 100,000	158

—**ii**—

Table of C	ontents
Chapter 7: Productivity Tools for Superusers and	
Advanced Administration	173
Introduction	173
Converting a 15-digit Salesforce opportunity ID to 18 digits	
using a formula field	174
Generating help pages for custom objects using Visualforce and	
a PDF document	177
Building a mass delete opportunity button using a custom list button	180
Chapter 8: Configuring and Installing Salesforce for	
Outlook E-mail Integration	189
Introduction	189
Enabling the Email to Salesforce feature in Salesforce CRM	190
Obtaining system requirements information for Salesforce for Outlook	194
Setting up Salesforce for Outlook configurations within Salesforce CRM	196
Installing the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine	204
Configuring the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine	213
Chapter 9: Integrating Salesforce CRM with External Online Tools	223
Introduction	223
Providing a Google News search for an account using a custom link	224
Building a custom Web Tab to display an external web application	228
Displaying the location of an organization using a Google Map and	
a Visualforce page	234
Index	245

## Preface

As an industry-leading customer relationship management (CRM) application, Salesforce CRM helps the enterprise to improve client relations. It greatly enhances sales performance and provides your business with a robust CRM system.

In order to achieve optimum performance and benefits from Salesforce CRM, there are many functional areas and techniques for you, as the Salesforce Administrator, to consider. This is the only cookbook-style publication that provides recipes which focus specifically on configuring and extending this powerful CRM system.

Salesforce CRM Admin Cookbook provides step-by-step instructions that enable you to instantly extend and unleash the power of Salesforce CRM. This practical cookbook contains recipes that are presented using clear and comprehensive instructions along with detailed screenshots, code, and comments.

Whether you are looking for solutions to enhance the core features or are looking for ideas for advanced customization techniques, this book will provide you with immediate, practical, and exciting real-world recipes.

### What this book covers

*Chapter 1, Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links,* covers recipes that enhance and extend the features and functionality associated with the Salesforce home page by using Home Page Components along with HTML, CSS, and JavaScript code.

*Chapter 2, Advanced User Interface,* includes advanced techniques and solutions that can be used to enhance and override the native Salesforce user interface and add graphical elements by using images, HTML, CSS, JavaScript, and Visualforce.

*Chapter 3, Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features,* introduces recipes that modify the behavior of standard functionality and elements of Salesforce CRM (such as extending the year range selection on the calendar pop-up control) using HTML and JavaScript.

Preface -

*Chapter 4, Automating Salesforce CRM,* provides standard Salesforce mechanisms that automate the Salesforce CRM system and helps to deliver best practice data management using Salesforce workflow and formulas.

*Chapter 5, Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM,* covers recipes that provide record validation and improve data quality using advanced Salesforce CRM validation rule mechanisms.

*Chapter 6, Implementing Approval Processes,* uses step-by-step instructions to describe the configuration of a complete approval process using the standard Salesforce CRM approval mechanism.

Chapter 7, Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration, offers techniques and solutions to improve admin productivity (for example, when mass-deleting records) by using custom buttons, formulas, and Visualforce.

Chapter 8, Configuring and Installing Salesforce for Outlook E-mail Integration, provides complete step-by-step instructions for the configuration and installation of Outlook e-mail integration with the Salesforce CRM application.

*Chapter 9, Integrating Salesforce CRM with External Online Tools,* contains advanced recipes that add data and functionality from external online systems that are served within Salesforce CRM using HTML, CSS, JavaScript, and Visualforce.

### What you need for this book

The pre-requisite for this book is a computer with an Internet connection with one of the following supported browsers: Microsoft Internet Explorer, Mozilla Firefox, Google Chrome or Apple Safari. You need either an Enterprise, Unlimited, or a Developer edition of Salesforce CRM along with System Administrator permission.

## Who this book is for

This book is for Salesforce administrators and developers who want to quickly incorporate enhanced functionality and extend the power of Salesforce CRM. Whether you are a Salesforce novice or a more experienced admin, this book provides practical, step-by-step instructions in the use of hidden features, advanced user interface techniques, and solutions for process automation, plus data and systems integration.

Not only are standard Salesforce CRM features covered, such as workflow and approval processes, validation rules, and formula fields, but you will also be exposed to additional technologies including HTML, JavaScript, CSS, Apex, and Visualforce.



### Conventions

In this book, you will find a number of styles of text that distinguish between different kinds of information. Here are some examples of these styles, and an explanation of their meaning.

Code words in text are shown as follows: "Within this component we are using the <iframe> HTML tag which allows us to insert the rendered output of a specified Visualforce page."

A block of code is set as follows:

```
<center>
<div style="border: 1px solid rgb(51, 153, 255); width: 96%; color:
black; font-size: 18px; background-color: rgb(255, 255, 204);"
id="NewsTicker">
<marquee onmouseover="this.scrollAmount=0" onmouseout="this.
scrollAmount=6" width="98%">Welcome to the Salesforce CRM Admin
cookbook</marquee></div></center><br>
```

**New terms** and **important words** are shown in bold. Words that you see on the screen, in menus or dialog boxes, for example, appear in the text like this: "Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**".



## **Reader feedback**

Feedback from our readers is always welcome. Let us know what you think about this book—what you liked or may have disliked. Reader feedback is important for us to develop titles that you really get the most out of.

To send us general feedback, simply send an e-mail to feedback@packtpub.com, and mention the book title via the subject of your message.

If there is a topic that you have expertise in and you are interested in either writing or contributing to a book, see our author guide on www.packtpub.com/authors.



Preface -

### **Customer support**

Now that you are the proud owner of a Packt book, we have a number of things to help you to get the most from your purchase.

### Errata

Although we have taken every care to ensure the accuracy of our content, mistakes do happen. If you find a mistake in one of our books—maybe a mistake in the text or the code—we would be grateful if you would report this to us. By doing so, you can save other readers from frustration and help us improve subsequent versions of this book. If you find any errata, please report them by visiting http://www.packtpub.com/support, selecting your book, clicking on the **errata submission form** link, and entering the details of your errata. Once your errata are verified, your submission will be accepted and the errata will be uploaded on our website, or added to any list of existing errata under the Errata section of that title. Any existing errata can be viewed by selecting your title from http://www.packtpub.com/support.

### Piracy

Piracy of copyright material on the Internet is an ongoing problem across all media. At Packt, we take the protection of our copyright and licenses very seriously. If you come across any illegal copies of our works, in any form, on the Internet, please provide us with the location address or website name immediately so that we can pursue a remedy.

Please contact us at copyright@packtpub.com with a link to the suspected pirated material.

We appreciate your help in protecting our authors, and our ability to bring you valuable content.

### Questions

You can contact us at questions@packtpub.com if you are having a problem with any aspect of the book, and we will do our best to address it.

\_\_\_\_4\_\_\_

# **1** Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- > Creating a Personal Setup link using the standard Custom Links on the sidebar
- ▶ Using Custom Links to open Training in a new window from the sidebar
- Creating a news-ticker message on the home page
- > Automatically collapsing Chatter feeds on the home page
- Removing Chatter feeds on the home page
- Adding a Send An Email button on the home page
- Showing Opportunity Sales Stage descriptions on the home page

## Introduction

The **Home** tab in Salesforce CRM is generally set as the opening page for users when they first log in to the application and provides a great way for users to view Chatter posts, access their calendar, tasks, items to approve, and so on.

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links \_\_\_\_\_

The f	ollowing	screenshot	shows	the Sa	alesforce	CRM	Home screen	:
-------	----------	------------	-------	--------	-----------	-----	-------------	---

Create New	Paul Goodey Monday 21 October	2013		
Recent items				
<u>Company X</u> <u>Martin Brown</u>	Calendar	New Event New Me	eting Request	Calendar Help ?
Irevor Howard           Itevor Howard           It	Scheduled Meetings	Requested Meetings	Mon Tu	October 2013 >
Salesforce CRM Admin	Today 21/10/2013		30 01	02 03 04 05 06
🂗 <u>Acme</u>	You have no events schedu	uled for the next 7 days.	07 08	09 10 11 12 13
<u>Test</u>			21 22	23 24 25 26 27
			28 29	30 31 01 02 03
🧟 Recycle Bin	My Tasks	New	Unresolved Emails	i 1 7 31
	Wy Idaks	0. North		D.L.I.T.
	Complete Date	Subject	Name	Chapter 2
	x 21/08/2013	Send Letter		Company X
	💎 Items to Approve	Manage All		ems to Approve Help ?
	Action	Related To Type	Most Recent Approver	Date Submitted
	Reassign   Approve / Reject	Test Opportunity	Howard, Trevor	27/09/2013 23:55
			I law and Taxaa	07/00/00 40 04 07

The **Home** tab allows various standard home page components to be shown, such as **Calendar**, **My Tasks**, or **Items to Approve**, (as shown in the preceding screenshot), that you are able to administer and choose whether to display for the various users in your organization.

Home page components can be presented to users by customizing the home page layouts where you can assign different home page layouts to different users based on their profile.

You can also create your own custom home page components that will display alongside the standard components and you can choose to make custom sidebar components display on all pages within the application or only on the **Home** tab.

The following recipes are designed to improve the layout of the home page. The recipes also provide additional features and functionality that are not provided natively within the Salesforce CRM application.



## **Creating a Personal Setup link using the standard Custom Links on the sidebar**

All users need to change their personal settings, from time to time, in the Salesforce CRM application. They may, for example, wish to edit their user information, change their password, or you may need them to grant login access to administrators, plus many other reasons.

Accessing the **Personal Setup** area is done by users clicking on their name, looking for the **Setup** link in the drop-down list, clicking on the **Setup** link, and then finally clicking on the **Personal Setup** link in the sidebar.

All this takes time and can often be a challenge for less-experienced users of the application. By providing a direct shortcut link in the sidebar, all users will be able to access their **Personal Setup** area with a single click, and save their time and efforts.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a Personal Setup link in the sidebar:

1. Navigate to the home page components' setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**.



Locate the **Custom Links** row within the **Standard Components** section.

2. Click on Edit.



Within the **Custom Links** page you can enter a maximum of 15 links.

3. Enter Personal Setup in the **1. Bookmark** field.

7

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

4. Enter /ui/setup/Setup?setupid=PersonalSetup in the corresponding **URL** field, as shown in the following screenshot:

Home Tab Custom Link	is		Help for this Page 🥝
	Save Cancel	]	
Custom Links			
Enter descriptive na example, "http://ww	ame for the link in the bookmark field a w.yahoo.com".	and enter the comple	ete web site address in the URL field, for
1. Bookmark	Personal Setup	URL	/ui/setup/Setup?setupid=Personal
2. Bookmark		URL	
3. Bookmark		URL	
4 Bookmark		IIRI	

5. Click on Save.



We now need to add the standard Custom Links component to a home page layout (if it has not been already added).

- 6. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.
- Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on Edit. Here we are editing the home page layout named DE Default, as shown in the following screenshot:



We will be presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.



8. Check the **Custom Links** checkbox in the **Select Narrow Components to Show** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Select Narrow	Components to Show	
Create New		Recent Items
Messages & Alerts		Custom Links
Tags		
		Next Cancel

- 9. Click on Next.
- 10. Move **Custom Links** to the top position in the **Narrow (Left) Column** using the **Arrange the component on your home page** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2. Order the comp	oonents	Step 2 of 2
Arrange the components on	your home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column	Wide (Right) Colu	mn
Create New Tags <u>Recent Items</u> Custom Links	<ul> <li>Top Calendar Tasks Items to Approve</li> <li>Down Sottom</li> </ul>	Top Lp Down Bottom
Pre	vious Save & Assign Save	Preview Cancel

11. Click on Save.



The link appears in the sidebar within the standard **Custom Links** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Custom Links	
Personal Setup	

When the link is clicked, the user is immediately presented with their Personal Setup page.



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

### There's more...

Clicking on the link displays the **Personal Setup** page in the same window and is useful when there is no requirement for the link to open up in a new browser window. The following screenshot shows the result of clicking on the **Personal Setup Custom Link**:

Home Chatter Leads Acc	ounts Contacts Reports Files Dashboa	rds Opportunities Forecasts 🛨 🔻
Expand All   Collapse All	Personal Setup	Help for this Page 🥑
Force.com Home	My Personal Information	
System Overview	<ul> <li>Edit your information, language, time zone, quota, or opportunity team</li> </ul>	Customize your tabs and related lists
Personal Setup	Change your password	<ul> <li>Grant login access to your administrator or salesforce.com Customer Support</li> </ul>
My Personal Information	Reset your security token	<ul> <li>Manage the visibility of your calendar to other users</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Email</li> <li>Import</li> </ul>	Create or edit a personal group	Edit your reminder settings
Desktop Integration	Email	
My Chatter Settings	Change your outgoing email settings	<ul> <li>Change your outgoing Stay-in-Touch email settings</li> </ul>
App Setup	Change your Email to Salesforce settings	View the status of my Mass Emails
► Customize	Create or edit an email template	
Create     Develop	Import	
<ul> <li>Deploy</li> </ul>	Import your data from Outlook, ACT!, etc.	
Schema Builder Installed Packages	Desktop Integration	
AppExchange Marketplace Critical Updates	Download Chatter Desktop	Remove records from your Force.com Connect Offline Briefcase
	Salesforce for Outlook	Define your Force.com Connect Offline Briefcase     settings
Administration Setup	Download Force.com Connect Offline	
<ul> <li>Manage Users</li> <li>Company Profile</li> </ul>	My Chatter Settings	

### See also

The Using Custom Links to open Training in a new window from the sidebar recipe in this chapter.

-10-

# Using Custom Links to open Training in a new window from the sidebar

In the Salesforce CRM application, there are various options for help and training.

Accessing the training area is done by the users by clicking on the **Help** link at the top of the page (which then opens in a new browser window). Users then need to look for the **Training** tab within the new page and then click on the tab.

All this takes a little time and can often be a challenge for less-experienced users of the application. By providing a direct shortcut link in the sidebar, all users will be able to open **Training** automatically in a new window with a single click, thus saving time and effort.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a link in the sidebar to open **Training** in a new window:

- 1. Navigate to the Custom Links home page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Custom Links**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter the label of the Custom Link in the Label field. Here, type the text Training.
- 4. Accept the default name of the Custom Link in the Name field, Training.
- 5. Leave the Protected Component checkbox unchecked.



The **Protected Component** option is used by developers to mark the Custom Link as protected in managed packages. This then allows the developer to delete the link in any future releases of the managed package without worrying about causing package installations to fail.

- 6. Enter the following description in the **Description** field: This a link to Salesforce Training.
- 7. Choose the **Display in new window** option from the **Behavior** picklist. Choose the **URL** option from the **Content Source** picklist.

11

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links

8. Enter /help/doc/user\_ed.jsp?loc=training into the source section as shown in the following screenshot:

Custom Link Edit	Save Quick Save Preview Cancel
Label	Training
name	I raining i
Protected Component	
Description	This a link to Salesforce Training
Behavior	Display in new window
Content Source	URL -
Select Field Type In Select field type  /help/doc/user_ed.jsp?loc=tr	nsert Field Insert Merge Field ▼ Insert Operator ▼ aining
Check Syntax	
Link Encoding Unicode (UT	F-8) •
	Save Quick Save Preview Cancel

- 9. Ensure the selection Unicode (UTF-8) is set in the Link Encoding picklist.
- 10. Click on Save.

We now need to create a custom home page component to house this custom link. The alert displayed in the following screenshot reminds us of that:

Lap	el Training			
Nan	ne Training	i		
Protected Compone	nt 🕅			
				OK
Select Field Type	Insert Field			Functions
Select Field Type Select field type 💌	Insert Field Insert Merge Field	•	Insert Operator 💌	Functions All Functi

11. Click on **OK**.



- 12. Now navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Home** | **Home Page Components**.
- 13. Click on New.
- 14. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen, if shown).

The **Next** button is found on the **Understanding Custom Components** splash screen (this page is only shown if the **Don't show this page again** checkbox has not previously been checked) as in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components	:his Page 🕢
You can add y be used to tai	your own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" a lor the home page to different user profiles.	and can
Туре	Description	
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to relevindustry news sites)	ant
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)	
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
Don't show	w this page again	
		Next

Here, we will be presented with the Step 1. New Custom Components page.

- 15. Enter the name of the **Custom Component** in the **Name** field. Enter the text Custom Links (in New Window).
- 16. Select the **Links** option from the **Type** options list as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 1. New 0	Custom Components	Step 1 of 2
		Next Cancel
Unless column	otherwise noted, custom components can only be display	ed in the left (narrow)
Name	Custom Links (in New W	
Туре	<ul> <li>Links</li> <li>Image</li> <li>HTML Area</li> </ul>	
		Next Cancel

17. Click on Next.



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

Custom Links not to show	Custom Links to show
F	Add emove

18. Now add the **Training** link to the list of **Custom Links to show** as shown in the following screenshot:

### 19. Click on Save



We have created our **Training** link's custom home page component but we are not finished yet. We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 20. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.
- 21. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**, as shown in the following screenshot:

I	Home Page Layouts Help for this Page 🥹					
1	This page allows you to create different tab layouts for the Home Tab.					
	ABC	D E F G	H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q	R   S   T   U   V   W   X   Y   Z   Other All		
ĺ	Page Layout Assignment New					
	Action	Name 🕇	Created By	Last Modified By		
ſ	Edit   Del	DE Default	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 14/07/2012 16:15		
	ABC	D   E   F   G	H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q	R   S   T   U   V   W   X   Y   Z   Other <b>All</b>		

We will be presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.



22. Check the **Custom Links (in New Window)** checkbox in the **Select Narrow Components to Show** section as shown in the following screenshot:

Custom Links	<
(in New	
Window)	

- 23. Click on Next.
- 24. Move **Custom Links (in New Window)** to the top position in **Narrow (Left) Column** using the **Arrange the component on your home page.** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Arrange the components on	our home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column	Wide (Right) Column	
Create New Tags Recent Items Custom Links Custom Links ( in New Wir	Top Send An Email Up Calendar Tasks Vers to Approve Down Chatter Feed Auto Hide Chatter Feed Removal Bottom	

25. Click on Save.

### How it works...

Clicking on the **Training** link opens a new smaller browser window with the Salesforce **Training** page directly accessed and loaded alongside the main Salesforce CRM application windows. Users can switch back to the main application when they want and simply close the **Training** window when they are finished viewing it.

You can see what this looks like in the following screenshot:

Custom I	inks (in New Wind	ow)
Training		



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links

### See also

The Creating a Personal Setup link using the standard Custom Links on the sidebar recipe in this chapter.

# Creating a news-ticker message on the home page

Animated text messages and custom HTML styling can be very effective in gaining users' attention.

Not only do they allow a reasonably large number of characters to be presented on a single line of text but they also provide a visually dynamic "headline news" style of message delivery for what can otherwise be overlooked static text.

You can draw attention to your news message on the Salesforce home page using this custom home page component recipe with the steps listed in the following section.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a news-ticker message on the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by clicking the following: Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown). The Next button is found on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen (this page is only shown if the Don't show this page again checkbox has not previously been checked) as in the following screenshot:

- 16

#### Chapter 1

Underst	anding Custom Components	his Page 🕜
You can add y be used to tai	your own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" a ilor the home page to different user profiles.	nd can
Туре	Description	
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to releva industry news sites)	ant
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)	
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
Don't show	w this page again	
		Next

Here, we are presented with the Step 1. New Custom Components page.

- 4. Enter the name of the custom component in the **Name** field. Enter the text News Ticker.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- Ensure that the Wide (Right) Column option is selected within the Component Position option list.



You are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the Show HTML checkbox.



The above step is important! Locate and check the **Show HTML** checkbox, as shown in the following screenshot:



9. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

```
<center>
```

```
<div style="border: 1px solid rgb(51, 153, 255); width: 96%;
color: black; font-size: 18px; background-color: rgb(255, 255,
204);" id="NewsTicker">
```



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

<marquee onmouseover="this.scrollAmount=0" onmouseout="this. scrollAmount=6" width="98%">Welcome to the Salesforce CRM Admin cookbook</marquee></div></center><br>

ep 2. New Custom Components	Step 2
	Previous Save Ca
Component Position:	
<ul> <li>Wide (Right) Column</li> <li>Narrow (Left) Column</li> </ul>	
Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed below	THE Development of UTAL is this
component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.	TIME. Poony written HTME in this
Formatting Controls         [How to use this ]	TIME. Poony written HI ME in this
Formatting Controls [How to use this] <pre></pre>	Show H background-color: rgb(255, 255, 20- scrollamount="6" direction="right" his.scrollAmount=0" quee>

10. Click on Save.



- 18

We have created our **News Ticker** custom home page component but we are not finished yet. We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 11. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.
- 12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**, as shown in the following screenshot:



We will be presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.

13. Check the **News Ticker** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section, as shown in the following screenshot:



- 14. Click on Next.
- 15. Move News Ticker to the top position in Wide (Right) Column using the Arrange the component on your home page. section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2. Order the comp	onents	Step 2 of 2
Arrange the components on yo	our home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column Create New Tags Recent Items	Wide (Right) Column Top Calendar Tasks Up Top Top Tasks Up Top Top Top Top Top Top Top Top Top To	) ] n ] m
	Previous Save & Assign Save	Preview Cancel

16. Click on Save.

### How it works...

By using HTML and in particular the HTML marquee tag and **Cascading Style Sheets** (**CSS**), we are able to present a moving text section. You can see what this looks like in the following screenshot:

ounts	Contacts	Opportunities	Contracts	Cases	Solutions	Products	Reports	Dashboards	+
2	SVP Sa	ales							
C News	Show Chatter								
		Welco	ome to th	e Sale	sforce CF	RM Admi	n cookb	ook	
Cal	endar		New Event	New Me	eting Request	]		Calendar	Help ?
	cheduled Me	etings Requeste	d Meetings				•		>



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

### There's more...

Replace the text Welcome to the Salesforce CRM Admin cookbook with a suitable message of your choice.

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard) you must ensure that the code is valid.



Pay particular attention to the displayed warning message:

Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly

There is a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a Home Page layout.



The marquee tag is a non-standard HTML element which causes text to scroll up, down, left or right automatically. From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marquee\_element:

The marquee element was first invented for Microsoft's Internet Explorer and is still supported by it. Firefox, Opera, Chrome, and Safari web browsers support it for compatibility with legacy pages.

# Automatically collapsing Chatter feeds on the home page

The **Chatter** feed on the home page appears at the top of the home page layout (as shown in the screenshot in the *Introduction* section) and is a great place for presenting the feed of **Chatter** posts.

However, since the **Chatter** feed is always shown at the top of the home page, users find themselves having to scroll down the home page to get to their calendar, items to approve, or anything else that has been configured on their home page, as shown in the following screenshot:

20

### Chapter 1



The **Hide Chatter** button allows users to manually hide the feed but this has to be done every time the user lands on the home page either when they first log in or when they click on the **Home** tab.



To save users' time by automatically hiding chatter feeds on the Home Page every time the user accesses the **Home** tab create this custom Home Page Component using the steps listed in the following section.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to automatically collapse Home Page Chatter feeds:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

21 —

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown). The Next button is found on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen (this page is only shown if the Don't show this page again checkbox has not previously been checked), as shown in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components
You can add y be used to tai	our own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" and can for the home page to different user profiles.
Туре	Description
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to relevant industry news sites)
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired
Don't show	v this page again
	Next

Here, we are presented with the Step 1. New Custom Components page.

- 4. Enter the name of the custom component in the **Name** field. In this recipe enter the text, Chatter Feed Auto Hide.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- 7. Ensure that the **Wide (Right) Column** option is selected within the **Component Position** option list.



You are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the **Show HTML** checkbox.



The above step is important! Locate and check the **Show HTML** checkbox as shown in the following screenshot:

appea

9. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

	components			
				Save Can
Name	Chatter Feed Auto H	lide		
Component I	osition:			
Wide (Right)	Column			
Please     written	ensure that the HTML co HTML in this component	de entered below is may cause the enti	s valid, well formed H re Home tab to appe	HTML. Poorly ar incorrectly.
Formatting	controls [How to use thi	<u>s</u> ]		V Show HT
	var e = document get	ElementByld("show	vFeedLink"); if(e.stv	/le.display ==

10. Click on Save.



We have created our **Chatter Feed Auto Hide** custom home page component but we are not finished yet. We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 11. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.
- 12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**.

We will be presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.

13. Check the **Chatter Feed Auto Hide** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section, as shown in the following screenshot:



14. Click on Next.


Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

15. Move the **Chatter Feed Auto Hide** to the top position in **Wide (Right) Column** using the **Arrange the component on your home page** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Arrange the components on	/our home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column Create New Tags Recent Items Custom Links	Wide (Right) Column	
	Previous Save & Assign Save Previous	eview Cance

16. Click on Save.

#### There's more...

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard) you must ensure that the code is valid.



Pay particular attention to the displayed warning message:

Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly

There is a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.



This recipe introduces an element of risk and is not supported by salesforce.com.

If salesforce.com chooses to rename the HTML ID, used for the **Hide Chatter** button, this recipe will cease to function. This recipe code would need to be changed to incorporate the new ID; hence this technique is not generally recommended by Salesforce.



## See also

The Removing Chatter feeds on the home page recipe in this chapter.

## **Removing Chatter feeds on the home page**

The **Chatter** feed on the home page appears at the top of the home page layout (as shown in the screenshot in the *Introduction* section) and is a great place for presenting the feed of **Chatter** posts.

However, often there are users who are not concerned with seeing these feeds on their home page and would like to completely remove the section. This is not possible using standard salesforce.com configuration.



In this scenario it is a requirement to fully remove the **Chatter** section and to remove the **Hide Chatter** button as well:





Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

You can remove **Chatter** feeds as well as the **Chatter Hide/Show** button on the home page using this custom home page component recipe with the set of steps listed in the following section.

## How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to remove **Chatter** feeds from the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by clicking the following: Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

#### 3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown). The Next button is found on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen (this page is only shown if the Don't show this page checkbox again has not previously been checked) as in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components
You can add y be used to tai	our own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" and can lor the home page to different user profiles.
Туре	Description
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to relevant industry news sites)
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired
Don't show	w this page again
	Next



Here, we are presented with the **Step 1. New Custom Components** page.

- 4. Enter the name of the custom component in the Name field. In this recipe, enter the text Chatter Feed Removal.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.



 Ensure the Wide (Right) Column option is selected within the Component Position option list.



You are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the Show HTML checkbox.



The above step is important! Locate and check the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Show}}$   $\ensuremath{\textbf{HTML}}$  checkbox as shown in the following screenshot:

appear incorrectly.

Show HTML

9. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

```
<script type="text/javascript">
document.getElementById("feedLinks").style.display = 'none';
document.getElementById("chatterfeedshell").style.display =
'none';
</script>
```

			Previous Sa	ve Ca
Component Position:				
Wide (Right) Column				
Narrow (Left) Column				
Please ensure that the component may cause	HTML code entered below is the entire Home tab to appea	valid, well formed HTML r incorrectly.	. Poorly written HTML in	this
Formatting Controls [How	o use this ]		[	Show H <sup>*</sup>
Formatting Controls [How <script type="text/java&lt;br&gt;document.getElementByld&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;u&gt;o use this&lt;/u&gt;]&lt;br&gt;script"> document.getElem 'chatterfeedshell").style.dis</td><td>entByld("feedLinks").s play = 'none'; </script>	tyle.display = 'none'; ,	Show H		
Formatting Controls [How <script type="text/java&lt;br&gt;document.getElementByld&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;u&gt;o use this&lt;/u&gt;]&lt;br&gt;script"> document.getElem 'chatterfeedshell").style.dis</td><td>entByld("feedLinks").s play = 'none'; </script>	tyle.display = 'none';	V Show H		

#### 10. Click on Save.



We have created our **Chatter Feed Removal** custom home page component but we are not finished yet. We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

- 11. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.
- 12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**.

We will be presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.

13. Check the **Chatter Feed Removal** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Chatter Feed	
Removal	

- 14. Click on Next.
- 15. Position the **News Ticker** as the top position in the **Wide (Right) Column** using the **Arrange the component on your home page.** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2. Order the compo	onents our home page.	Step 2 of 2
Narrow (Left) Column Create New Tags Recent liems Custom Links	Wide (Right) Column Top Calendar Top Calendar Up Chatter Feed Removal Down Setom	
	Previous Save & Assign Save Pre	view Cancel

16. Click on Save.

## How it works...

In the following screenshot, you can see the effects of having the **Chatter** section removed from the home page:





### There's more...

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard) you must ensure that the code is valid.



Pay particular attention to the displayed warning message:

Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly

There are a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a Home Page layout.



This recipe introduces an element of risk and is not supported by salesforce.com.

If salesforce.com chooses to rename the HTML IDs, used for the **Chatter** section, this recipe will cease to function. This recipe's code would need to be changed to incorporate the new ID, hence this technique is not generally recommended by Salesforce.

## Adding a Send An Email button on the home page

Within the Salesforce CRM application you can natively add custom links to the home page, which can be configured to call web URLs. These URLs can be either external to Salesforce or internal, such as a link to the Salesforce CRM Training pages (covered in an earlier recipe within this chapter).

Salesforce does not, however, natively provide a way of adding custom buttons onto the home page in order to call web URLs.

Often it is preferable to provide a button to invoke certain behavior (rather than a URL link). One such example is a **Send An Email** button.

29

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links \_

## How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to add a Send An Email button to the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown). The Next button is found on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen (this page is only shown if the Don't show this page again checkbox has not previously been checked), as shown in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components	Help for this Page 🕜
You can add y be used to tai	our own components to a home page. These are called "custom com lor the home page to different user profiles.	ponents" and can
Туре	Description	
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, industry news sites)	or to relevant
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your compa	ny logo)
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
Don't sho	w this page again	
		Next

Here, we will be presented with the Step 1. New Custom Components page.

- 4. Enter the name of the custom component in the **Name** field. Enter the text Email Button.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- 7. Ensure that the **Wide (Right) Column** option is selected within the **Component Position** option list.



You are unable to change this setting after the component > is created.



8. Check the **Show HTML** checkbox.



9. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

```
<INPUT style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-
BOTTOM: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-BOTTOM:
1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; PADDING-RIGHT:
3px; DISPLAY: inline; BACKGROUND-REPEAT:
repeat-x; FONT-FAMILY: 'Verdana', 'Geneva', sans-serif;
BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE:
none; COLOR: #ffffff; FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-
WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid;
PADDING-TOP: 1px" title="This will send an email"
onclick="javascript:window.location='/_ui/core/email/author/
EmailAuthor';" name=SendAnEmail value=Send
type=button>
```

Save         Can           Name         Send An Email           Component Position:         Wide (Right) Column           Image: Send An Email         Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.           Image: Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.           Formatting Controls         [How to use this]           Image: PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; PADDING-RIGHT: 3px; DISPLAY: Inline; BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-DE: 1nd*; Hise=This will send an email"	Name Component Positio Wide (Right) Colum I Please ensur this compone	Send An Email In: In re that the HTML code			Save	Cance
Name         Send An Email           Component Position:         Wide (Right) Column           Image: Send An Email         Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.           Formatting Controls [How to use this]         Image: Show HT <input (hear-this="" an="" email")<="" send="" style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-BOTTOM: #5c5d61 1px&lt;/td&gt;         Show HT           solid; PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; DISPLAY: inline; BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff; FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-1p2. 1px" th="" will=""/> <th>Name Component Positio Wide (Right) Colum Please ensur this compone</th> <th>Send An Email n: in re that the HTML code (</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>	Name Component Positio Wide (Right) Colum Please ensur this compone	Send An Email n: in re that the HTML code (				
Component Position: Wide (Right) Column   Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.  Formatting Controls [How to use this]  INPUT style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-BOTTOM: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; PADDING- RIGHT: 3px; DISPLAY: inline; BACKGROUND-REPEAT: repeat.x; FONT-FAMILY: 'Verdana', 'Geneva', sans-seiff; BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-1DP: 10%' Itle="This will send an email"	Component Positio Wide (Right) Colum Please ensur this compone	n: In re that the HTML code (				
Wide (Right) Column         Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.         Formatting Controls       [How to use this] <input [hearthis="" an="" email"<="" sond="" style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-BOTTOM: #5c5d611px&lt;/td&gt;         solid; PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; DISPLAY: inline; BACKGROUND-REPEAT: repeat-x; FONT-FAMILY: 'Verdana', 'Geneva', sans-serif, BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff         FONT-SIZE: 80%, CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d611px solid; PADDING-DP-1xy" td="" will=""/> <td>Wide (Right) Colum</td> <td>n re that the HTML code (</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	Wide (Right) Colum	n re that the HTML code (				
Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.     Formatting Controls [How to use this]     INPUT style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-BOTTOM: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; DADING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; CAUSAR (COLOR-REGULT) (Geneva', sans-serif, BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-TOP- 1xy" (Hitte="This will send an email")	<ol> <li>Please ensur this compone</li> </ol>	re that the HTML code (				
Formatting Controls [How to use this] <input <="" hitle="This will send an email" style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-BOTTOM: #5c5d61 1px&lt;br&gt;solid; PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; PADDING-&lt;br&gt;RIGHT: 3px; DISPLAY: inline; BACKGROUND-REPEAT: repeatx; FONT-FAMILY: Verdana',&lt;br&gt;'Geneva', sans-serif, BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff&lt;br&gt;FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid;&lt;br&gt;PADDING-7DP. 1px" td=""/> <td>· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·</td> <td>ent may cause the entir</td> <td>ntered below is valio Home tab to appea</td> <td>, well formed HTML. r incorrectly.</td> <td>Poorly written HTI</td> <td>ML in</td>	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ent may cause the entir	ntered below is valio Home tab to appea	, well formed HTML. r incorrectly.	Poorly written HTI	ML in
<input style="BACKGROUND-IMAGE: url(/img/bgButton.gif); BORDER-BOTTOM: #5c5d61 1px&lt;br&gt;solid; PADDING-BOTTOM: 1px; BORDER-LEFT-STYLE: none; PADDING-LEFT: 3px; PADDING-&lt;br&gt;RIGHT: 3px; DISPLAY: inline; BACKGROUND-REPEAT: repeat-x; FONT-FAMILY: " verdana',<br=""/> 'Geneva'; sans-serif; BACKGROUND-POSITION: left top; BORDER-TOP-STYLE: none; COLOR: #fff FONT-SIZE: 80%; CURSOR: pointer; FONT-WEIGHT: bold; BORDER-RIGHT: #5c5d61 1px solid; PADDING-TOP: 1ny" filte="This will sond an email"	Formatting Contro	Is [ <u>How to use this</u> ]			V Sł	iow HTM
value=Send type=button>	<input javascrip<br="" style="B4&lt;br&gt;solid; PADDING-E&lt;br&gt;RIGHT: 3px; DISP&lt;br&gt;'Geneva', sans-sei&lt;br&gt;FONT-SIZE: 80%;&lt;br&gt;PADDING-TOP: 1&lt;br&gt;onclick="/> value=Send type=	ACKGROUND-IMAGE 30TTOM: 1px; BORD !LAY: inline; BACKGF if; BACKGROUND-Pi CURSOR: pointer; F px" title="This will se t:window.location='/_! button>	: url//img/bgButton. ER-LEFT-STYLE: n OUND-REPEAT: re DSITION: left top; B DNT-WEIGHT: bold id an email" ii/core/email/author.	if); BORDER-BOT ine; PADDING-LEF peat-x; FONT-FAM DRDER-TOP-STYL BORDER-RIGHT: EmailAuthor';" nam	TOM: #5c5d61 1 FT: 3px; PADDIN IILY: 'Verdana', E: none; COLOR #5c5d61 1px sol ne=SendAnEmail	)x 3- :: #mm id;



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links

10. Click on Save.



We have created our **Send An Email** button's custom home page component but we are not finished yet. We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 11. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by clicking the following: Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts.
- 12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**.

We will be presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.

13. Check the **Send An Email** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section as shown:



- 14. Click on Next.
- 15. Position the **Send An Email** button as the top position in the **Wide (Right) Column** using the **Arrange the component on your home page.** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Narrow (Left) Column		Wide (Right) Column		
Create New Tags Recent Items Custom Links	Lop Up Down Sottom	Send An Email Calendar Tasks Items to Approve	Top	

16. Click on Save.



## How it works...

You can see what this looks like in the following screenshot:

Home Chatter Leads	Accounts Contacts Reports	Files Dashboard	ds Opportunities	Forecasts + 💌
Create New	Paul Goodey Monday 21 October	2013		
Recent Items	Ju- Show Feed			
<u>Company X</u> <u>Martin Brown</u> Trever Howard	Send An Email Send			
RK World	My Tasks	New	Unresolved Emails	Overdue 🔻
Salesforce CRM Cookbook	Complete Date	Subject	Name	Related To
Salesforce CRM Admin	x 08/06/2013	Task		Chapter 2
Norme Acme	x 21/08/2013	Send Letter		Company X
<u>Test</u>				

When the button is clicked the task's e-mail page is displayed, as shown in the following screenshot:

	Send Select Template Attach	File Check Spelling Cancel
Edit Email		= Required Informat
Email Format To	Text-Only [ Switch to HTML ]	
Related To	Account -	9
Additional To:		* <b>*</b>
CC:		÷ 🕾
BCC:		÷ 🕾
Subject		
Body		
	Send Select Template Attach	File Check Spelling Cancel

## There's more...

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in Step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard) you must ensure that the code is valid.

33 -

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links



Pay particular attention to the displayed warning message:

Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly

There are a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.

# Showing Opportunity Sales Stages descriptions on the home page

The Opportunity Sales Stages configured in a Salesforce organization are important for pipeline and performance measurement. The stages should be clearly described and communicated to the sales team and across the business. In this a recipe we will describe the stages in Salesforce and make these descriptions available on the home page.

## **Getting ready**

Carry out the following steps to add sales stages descriptions:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Opportunities | Fields | Stage**.
- 2. Click on **Edit** on the **Stage Name**.
- 3. Enter text in the **Description field**.

Opportu	nity Stages	1			Help for this Page
odify or Add t itegory autor ecasts.	he stage to fit your s atically determines I	ales process. Note that the Ty now opportunities are tracked i	pe and Forecast Category v n a forecast, but these value	alues affect ea es can be revis	ch other. The Forecast ed when users update their
Char Stage	ging the Type or Fored	ast Category will update all opp	ortunities that have this stage	value. Probability	10
Name Type	Open 👻			Forecast Category	Pipeline 🔻
Description	The Prospecting st	age is the default stage		Chart Color	Assigned dynamically 🚻

Now continue to add descriptions for all your sales stages by following the steps above.

## How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create an Apex class to show Opportunity Sales Stages descriptions on the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Apex Classes**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

```
// Controller code for Help Sales Stage VisualForce Page Handler
public class clsHelpSalesStages{
  // This is a public getter method and returns a list of
Opportunity Sales Stages
  // the method is called from the Visualforce page
  public List<OpportunityStage> getSalesStages() {
    // This is a SOQL query to retrieve a list of matching
Opportunity Sales Stages
    // The SELECT clause returns the fields: MasterLabel,
IsClosed, IsWon, ForecastCategory,
    11
           ForecastCategoryName, DefaultProbability, Description
    // The WHERE clause (WHERE IsActive = true) filters the query
so that only Active
    11
           Opportunity Stages are returned
    // The the ORDER BY clause (ORDER BY SortOrder ASC sorts the
list of Opportunity Stages
    11
          in ascending order using the SortOrder field
    // the standard Sort Order
    List<OpportunityStage> lstOppStage = [ SELECT MasterLabel,
                           IsClosed,
                           IsWon,
                           ForecastCategory,
                           ForecastCategoryName,
                           DefaultProbability,
                           Description
                    FROM OpportunityStage
                    WHERE IsActive = true
                    ORDER BY SortOrder ASC ];
    return lstOppStage;
  }
  // This is a test method - The test methods must provide at
least 75% code coverage
  // test methods are required to deploy Apex to a production
environment
```

35

Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links

```
public static testMethod void testMyController(){
    clsHelpSalesStages objOppStage = new clsHelpSalesStages();
    List<OpportunityStage> lstOppStageTest = objOppStage
.getSalesStages();
    // This is an assertion to ensure that Opportunity Sales
Stages are returned.
    System.assert(lstOppStageTest.size() > 0);
  }
}
```

4. Click on Save.



Carry out the following steps to create a Visualforce page to show **Opportunity Sales Stages** descriptions on the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter vfpHelpSalesStages in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default vfpHelpSalesStages in the Name field.



5. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

```
<apex:page controller="clsHelpSalesStages" tabStyle="Opportunity"</pre>
showHeader="false" sidebar="false">
<apex:form >
<apex:sectionHeader title="Sales Stages Description. Date:</pre>
{ !NOW() } "/>
<apex:pageBlock title="">
<apex:pageMessages ></apex:pageMessages>
<apex:pageBlockTable value="{!SalesStages}" var="s" rendered="{!NO</pre>
T(ISNULL(SalesStages)) } ">
<apex:column >
<apex:facet name="header">Name</apex:facet>
<div style="background-color:{!CASE(s.ForecastCategoryName,'Closed")</pre>
', 'maroon', 'Omitted', '#FFA07A', 'Commit', 'green', 'Funnel', 'blue', 'g
ray') };
color:{!CASE(s.ForecastCategoryName, 'Omitted', 'black', 'white')}">
{!s.MasterLabel}
</div>
</apex:column>
<apex:column value="{!s.DefaultProbability}"></apex:column>
<apex:column value="{!s.Description}"></apex:column>
<apex:column value="{!s.ForecastCategoryName}"></apex:column>
</apex:pageBlockTable>
</apex:pageBlock>
</apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

			= Required Information
Label	vfpHelpSalesSt	ages	
Name	ufe Hole Coloo St		
name	vipmeipsaiessi	ages	
Description	Display the Oppo	ntunity Sales Stages	
visualforce Markup	Version Settings		
۹ 🔶	🔶 А А		
<pre>3 <apex:sec 4 <apex:pag 5 <apex:pag 6 <apex:pag 7 <apex:col< pre=""></apex:col<></apex:pag </apex:pag </apex:pag </apex:sec </pre>	tionHeader tit eBlock title=" eMessages >eBlockTable va umn > et name="heade	<pre>tle="Sales Stages Description. Date: ""&gt; appex:pageMessages&gt; alue="{!SalesStages}" var="s" render er"&gt;Name</pre>	{!NOW()}"/> ed="{!NOT(ISNULL(S



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links -

6. Now set security for the required profiles in your organization (this is required for every user profile that you wish to view the sales stage descriptions).

Visualforce	Pages	
Visualforce Pages pro enhance existing appl	vide a robust and eas ications to optimize y	sy to use mechanis /our users' product
View: All - Create	New View	
	A   B   C   D   E   F	G   H   I   J   K   L   I
Action	Label 1	Name
Edit   Del   Security	vfpHelpSalesStages	vfpHelpSalesStag

- 7. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**.
- 8. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

9. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown). The Next button is found on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen (this page is only shown if the Don't show this page again checkbox has not previously been checked), as in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components	Help for this Page 🥜
You can add y be used to tai	our own components to a home page. These are called "custom co lor the home page to different user profiles.	mponents" and can
Туре	Description	
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intrane industry news sites)	et, or to relevant
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your comp	any logo)
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
Don't show	w this page again	
		Next

Here, we are presented with the Step 1. New Custom Components page.



- 10. Enter the name of the custom component in the **Name** field. Enter the text Opportunity Sales Stages.
- 11. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 12. Click on Next.
- 13. Ensure that the option **Wide (Right) Column** is selected within the **Component Position** option list.



You are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

14. Check the **Show HTML** checkbox.



15. Paste the following code:

```
<iframe style="width: 100%; height: 400px;" src="/apex/
vfpHelpSalesStages" frameBorder="0"></iframe>
```

16. Click on Save.



We have created our **Opportunity Sales Stages** custom home page component but we are not finished yet. We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 17. Navigate to the home page components going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.
- Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on Edit. Here we are editing the home page layout named DE Default.

We are presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.



Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links

19. Check the **Opportunity Sales Stages** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section, as shown in the following screenshot:



- 20. Click on Next.
- 21. Move the **Opportunity Sales Stages** to the top position in the **Wide (Right) Column** using the **Arrange the component on your home page.** section, as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2. Order the compor	ients	Step 2 of 2
Arrange the components on yo	ur home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column Create New Tags Recent Items Custom Links	Wide (Right) Column Top Calendar Tasks Items to Approve Opportunity Sales Stages Down Down Down Down	
	Previous Save & Assign Save Previous	view Cancel

#### 22. Click on Save.

### How it works...

By adding the description for the sales stages, the Visualforce and Apex reads the data directly from within Salesforce and so, regardless of whether the sales stage descriptions change or even the sales stages themselves change in the future, the content is always up-to-date.

Users can then see the description, that you would have set, for each of the opportunity stages in the organization on the Visualforce page without having to create dummy opportunities and look at the available stage names.

Salesforce does not natively support the embedding of Visualforce pages into the home page, hence the need to create this HTML custom component. Within this component we are using the <iframe> HTML tag we are able to insert the rendered output of a specified Visualforce page.



You can see how this appears on the home page in the following screenshot:

nems to Appro	Ve	indgo All	items to Approve help
o records to display			
ortunity Sales Stages			
Name	Probability (%)	Description	Forecast Category Name
Prospecting	10%	The Prospecting stage is the default stage	Pipeline
Qualification	10%		Pipeline
Needs Analysis	20%		Pipeline
Value Proposition	50%		Pipeline
ld. Decision Makers	60%		Pipeline
Perception Analysis	70%		Pipeline
Proposal/Price Quote	75%		Pipeline
Negotiation/Review	90%		Pipeline
Closed Won	100%		Closed
olooca mon			

## There's more...

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the component's wizard) you must ensure that the code is valid.



Pay particular attention to the displayed warning message:

Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly

There are a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.



# 2 Advanced User Interface

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- > Displaying Case Priority flags using a formula field and salesforce.com images
- > Building an Account Revenue indicator using a formula field and custom images
- ► Creating a clutter-free Account tab using Visualforce
- ► Showing a tabbed Account Detail page using Visualforce
- ▶ Rendering an Account credit score graphically using JavaScript, CSS, and Visualforce
- > Presenting an Account credit score graphically using a Google image chart

## Introduction

There is a saying that a picture paints a thousand words. Whether this is true, there is no doubt that pictures and images, often, far better describe information than words and numbers alone.

Text and numerical data can often be better represented as graphical charts and images often provide a quick way to compare data values. Images can also provide a more visually powerful style of message delivery for what can otherwise be overlooked static text or numbers.

In this chapter, the recipes are designed to enhance the user interface and provide features and functionality for visually displaying information that is not provided natively within Salesforce.

Advanced User Interface

## Displaying Case Priority flags using a formula field and salesforce.com images

The use of certain colors to represent certain states has become commonplace throughout the world. Red generally conveys a warning and on the ubiquitous traffic signal means stop.

Continuing with the look at traffic signals, and the use of red for stop, green for go, and yellow for proceed with caution, these colors are ranked in the order—red, yellow, and green—and using flags of these colors allows us to rank statuses and to highlight certain priorities.



Salesforce CRM contains accessible images of red, yellow, and green flags.

In this recipe, we will display an image according to a certain priority setting on the Case record detail page where the priority setting is selected using the standard picklist field called **Priority**.

## How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a formula field to display salesforce.com images:

1. Navigate to the Case customization setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Cases | Fields**.



Scroll down to the **Case Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



We will be presented with the **Step 1. Choose the field type** page.

- 3. Select the **Formula** option.
- 4. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 2. Choose output type** page.



45

- 5. Enter Priority Graphic in the Field Label textbox.
- 6. Click on **Field Name**. When clicking out of the **Field Label** textbox **Field Name** is automatically filled with the value Priority Graphic.
- 7. Set Formula Return Type as Text.
- 8. Click on Next.



9. Paste the following code:

```
Priority Graphic for the Case, for High, Medium or Low.
For high priority cases a red flag is displayed; for medium an
orange is shown and for a low a green flag is shown.
IMAGE
(
IF( ISPICKVAL(Priority, "Low"),
  "/img/samples/flag green.gif",
   IF( ISPICKVAL(Priority, "Medium"),
     "/img/samples/flag yellow.gif",
      "/img/samples/flag red.gif"
   )
),
"", 15, 15
)
```

- 10. In the Blank Field Handling section, select the Treat blank fields as blanks option.
- 11. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 4. Establish field-level security** page.

- 12. Select the profiles to which you want to grant read access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 13. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 5. Add to page layouts** page.

Advanced User Interface -

- 14. Select the page layouts that should include this field. The field will be added as the last field in the first 2-column section of these page layouts. The field will not appear on any pages if you do not select a layout.
- 15. Finally, click on Save.

#### How it works...

The formula field graphic is dynamically generated based on the selected priority value and the rendered image appears on the case detail page.

You can see what this looks like when the **Priority** is set to **High** in the following screenshot:

Priority	High
Priority Graphic	

You can see what this looks like when the **Priority** is set to **Medium** in the following screenshot:

Priority	Medium
Priority Graphic	

You can see what this looks like when the Priority is set to Low in the following screenshot:



## Building an Account Revenue indicator using a formula field and custom images

Increasingly on the Web, we find websites that use images of gold or silver stars to provide reviews and to rank the quality or usefulness of various products and services.

It has become universally accepted that one or no star equates to something very poor and a rating of five stars is seen to be excellent. By building an incremental number of images, we can create an associated image list of, say 1 to 5, that conveys a rating and ranking factor.

For this recipe, we are using a dollar image that will be repeated depending on the value of the **Account Revenue** amount.





The dollar image we are using is a custom image and is not provided by the Salesforce CRM application.

Using the value entered in the standard **Account Revenue** field we will create a custom formula field to build a set of images, from one to five, whenever the **Account Revenue** amount meets a certain threshold criteria.

The thresholds that will formulate are:

- Greater than (or equal to) \$100,000 = one dollar image
- ► Greater than (or equal to) \$500,000 = two dollar images
- ▶ Greater than (or equal to) \$1 million = three dollar images
- ► Greater than (or equal to) \$2 million = four dollar images
- Greater than (or equal to) \$5 million = five dollar images

Amounts less than \$100,000 will have no images displayed.

## **Getting ready**

We can use custom images that we have either created ourselves or obtained from an external source and store them in the Salesforce CRM application.

External images can be uploaded into Salesforce CRM by carrying out the following steps:

1. Create or source a suitable image to represent a dollar symbol.

[	The image we have used here is a 16-by-16 pixel icon called money_dollar.png available from famfamfam.com, shown as follows:
J.	\$
	FamFamFam have provided various images from their "Silk Icons library" available under the Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 License at http://www.famfamfam.com/lab/icons/silk/.

- 2. Navigate to the Static Resources setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Static Resources**.
- 3. Click on New.



Advanced User Interface

- 4. Enter the name of the Static Resource in the **Name** field. For this recipe type the text money dollar.
- 5. In the File uploader control, click on the **Browse...** button to select the image to upload from your computer. In this recipe choose the image identified in step 1.



Ignore the Cache Control picklist selection and leave it as default **Private** (Cache Control is only relevant to static resources used in Force.com sites).

The Static Resources setup screen appears, shown as follows:

Static Reso	urce	Help for this Page 😯
Static Resource	Edit Save Cancel	
Static Resource In	Iformation	= Required Information
Name Description	money_dollar famfamfam silk money dollar (16x16 pixels)	A 7
File Cache Control	C:\Paul\setupforce\Packt Publishing\Admin Cookbook\Cf Browse Private	
	Save Cancel	

6. Click on Save.



Static resources allow us to upload images that we can reference within Salesforce CRM, such as from formula fields, Visualforce pages, and so on. This reference is a Web URL and is formed as /resource/[UNIQUE ID]/money\_dollar where the [UNIQUE ID] is a unique ID which is generated for every static resource and is unique throughout every Salesforce CRM system.

48

Now, to find the ID for the static resource uploaded above, carry out the following steps:

1. Click on **View File**, as shown in the following screenshot:

Static Resources Money_	<sub>rce</sub> _dollar	Help for this Page 🤗
Static Re	esource	Detail Edit Delete Where is this used?
	Name	money_dollar
Namespa	ce Prefix	
Des	scription	famfamfam silk money dollar (16x16 pixels)
MI	МЕ Туре	image/x-png
Cache	e Control	Private
	Size	630 bytes
	(	View file
Cr	eated By	System Administrator, 13/02/2013 23:32
Last Mo	dified By	System Administrator, 13/02/2013 23:32
		Edit Delete Where is this used?

2. Note the Web URL that is displayed in the browser address bar; this is the ID for the static resource, as shown in the following screenshot:



The URL that is generated is /resource/1360798680000/ money\_dollar.

You will now need to make a note of the URL that is shown in your Salesforce organization. This URL is specified for the reference to the image in a custom formula field that is used in this recipe using the steps in the following section.

49

Advanced User Interface

## How to do it...

Now let's create the custom field that will reference the dollar image that was uploaded above:

- 1. Navigate to the Account customization setup page by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Fields.
- 2. Click on New.



We will be presented with the **Step 1. Choose the field type** page.

3. Select the Formula option, as shown in the following screenshot:

New Custom Field		Help for this Page 😯
Step 1. Choose the field	type	Step 1
		Next Cancel
Specify the type of information the	at the custom field will contain.	
Data Type		
None Selected	Select one of the data types below.	
C Auto Number	A system-generated sequence number that uses a display format you automatically incremented for each new record.	define. The number is
Formula	A read-only field that derives its value from a formula expression you d updated when any of the source fields change.	lefine. The formula field is

4. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 2. Choose output type** page.

- 5. Enter Account Revenue Graphic in the Field Label textbox.
- 6. Click on Field Name. When clicking out of the Field Label textbox Field Name is automatically filled with the value Account\_Revenue\_Graphic.
- 7. Set the Formula Return Type as Text.
- 8. Click on Next.





9. Paste the following code in the formula edit box (as shown in the image further down):

Remember to replace the URL shown with the URL from your Salesforce organization.

```
Begin the check for Annual Revenue value and set the following:
Greater than (or equal to) 100,000 = One Dollar image
Greater than (or equal to) 500,000 = Two Dollar image
Greater than (or equal to) 1,000,000 = Three Dollar image
Greater than (or equal to) 2,000,000 = Four Dollar image
Greater than (or equal to) 5,000,000 = Five Dollar image
IF( AnnualRevenue > 99999, IMAGE("/resource/1360798680000/money_
dollar", "$", 16, 16),"")
&
IF( AnnualRevenue > 499999, IMAGE("/resource/1360798680000/money
dollar", "$", 16, 16),"")
&
IF( AnnualRevenue > 999999, IMAGE("/resource/1360798680000/money
dollar", "$", 16, 16),"")
IF( AnnualRevenue > 1999999, IMAGE("/resource/1360798680000/money
dollar", "$", 16, 16),"")
&
IF( AnnualRevenue > 4999999, IMAGE("/resource/1360798680000/money
dollar", "$", 16, 16),"")
```

10. Optionally enter the following in the **Description** field:

Greater than (or equal to) 100,000 = One Dollar image Greater than (or equal to) 500,000 = Two Dollar image Greater than (or equal to) 1,000,000 = Three Dollar image Greater than (or equal to) 2,000,000 = Four Dollar image Greater than (or equal to) 5,000,000 = Five Dollar image

#### 11. Optionally enter the following in the Help Text field:

1 Dollar image = 100,000 or more
2 Dollar images = 500,000 or more
3 Dollar images = 1,000,000 or more
4 Dollar images = 2,000,000 or more
5 Dollar images = 5,000,000 or more



Advanced User Interface —

12. In the **Blank Field Handling** section, select the **Treat blank fields as blanks** option, as shown in the following screenshot:

ew Custom	Field			Help for this Page
Step 3. Enter f	ormula			Step 3 of
				Previous Next Canc
nter your formula ubtab to use addit xample: Full Na Simple Formula	and click Check Syntax to check for ional fields, operators, and function ime = LastName & ", " & FirstName Advanced Formula	r errors. Click the Advanced For is. <u>More Examples</u>	mula	Quick Tips • <u>Getting Started</u> • <u>Operators &amp; Functions</u>
Insert Field	Insert Operator V			Functions
Account Revenue	Graphic (Text) =			All Function Categories
Check for Annual R Greater than (or equ Greater than (or equ Greater than (or equ Greater than (or equ Greater than (or equ	evenue value and set the following: al to) 100,000 = One Dollar image al to) 500,000 = Two Dollar image al to) 1,000,000 = Foru Dollar image al to) 2,000,000 = Foru Dollar image al to) 5,000,000 = Five Dollar image		-	AND (E) BEGINS BLANKVALUE BR CASE •
F(AnnualRevenue file=015E0000000z	> 99999, IMAGE("/servlet/servlet.Filel 3cc", "\$", 16, 16)."")	Download?		macri sciected i unchon
& F( AnnualRevenue iile=015E00000002!	> 499999, IMAGE("/servlet/servlet.File Scc", "\$", 16, 16),"")	eDownload?		
∝ F( AnnualRevenue īile=015E0000000z!	> 999999, IMAGE("/servlet/servlet.File 3cc", "\$", 16, 16),"")	eDownload?		
× F(AnnualRevenue file=015E00000002	> 19999999, IMAGE("/servlet/servlet.F Scc", "\$", 16, 16),"")	ileDownload?		
s F( AnnualRevenue īile=015E0000000zl	> 4999999, IMAGE("/servlet/servlet.F 3cc", "\$", 16, 16),"")	ileDownload?		
Check Syntax				
Description				
Greater than (or eq Greater than (or eq	ual to) 100,000 = One Dollar image ual to) 500,000 = Two Dollar image		*	
Holp Toxt			_	
neip rext	0.000 or more		^ i	
1 Dollar image = 10 2 Dollar images = 5	00,000 or more		*	
1 Dollar image = 10 2 Dollar images = 5 Blank Field Har	00,000 or more		Ŧ	
1 Dollar image = 10 2 Dollar images = 5 Blank Field Han If your formula rei blank.	00,000 or more ndling ferences any number, currency, or per	cent fields, specify what happens to	• o the r	formula output when their values are
1 Dollar image = 10 2 Dollar images = 5 Blank Field Han If your formula rei blank.	outo of hitse 00,000 or more diling ferences any number, currency, or per Treat blank fields as zeroe Treat blank fields as blanks	cent fields, specify what happens to s	o the r	formula output when their values are



13. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 4. Establish field**level security page.

- 14. Select the profiles to which you want to grant read access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 15. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 5. Add to page layouts** page.

- 16. Select the page layouts that should include this field. The field will be added as the last field in the first 2-column section of these page layouts. The field will not appear on any pages if you do not select a layout.
- 17. Click on Save.

## How it works...

The formula field graphic is dynamically generated based on the annual revenue value and the rendered image appears on the **Account Detail** page.

You can see what this looks like when the **Annual Revenue** is set to **\$1,000,000** in the following screenshot:



You can see what this looks like when the **Annual Revenue** is set to **\$6,000,000** in the following screenshot:





Advanced User Interface

## **Creating a clutter-free Account tab using Visualforce**

When users click on the **Account** tab in Salesforce CRM they are presented with a screen that shows by default a **Recent Accounts** section within which is a list of their recently viewed accounts.

Below the **Recent Accounts** section are **Reports** and **Tools** sections, as shown in the following screenshot:

Leads	Accounts	Contacts	Opportunities	Forecasts	Contracts	Cases	+	•	
	Accounts Home					Tell me r	nore!   He	lp for this Pa	ge 🕜
View:	All Accounts		▼ Go!	Edit   Crea	ate New View				
Rece	ent Account	ts	New				Rece	ently Viewed	•
Acco	unt Name			Billin	ig City	Ph	one		
Acme	2								
<u>Burlir</u>	ngton Textiles C	orp of America		Burlin	ngton	(33	36) 222-7	000	
sFord	<u>:e</u>			San	Francisco	(4	15) 901-7	000	
Dicke	enson plc			Lawr	ence	(78	35) 241-6	200	
Unite	d Oil & Gas Co	<u>rp.</u>		New	York	(21	12) 842-5	500	
Rep	orts			Tools					
Activ	Active Accounts			Import My Accounts & Contacts					
Acco	Accounts with last activity > 30 days			Import My Organization's Accounts & Contacts					
Acco	Account Owners			Mass Delete Accounts					
Cont	act Role Report	t		Transfer Acc	ounts				
Acco	Account History Report			Merge Accounts					
Partr	Partner Accounts			Sales Methodologies					
<u>Go t</u>	o Reports »								

This screen can be very useful when users are aware of its capabilities, however less-experienced users are often confused when they click on the **Account** tab and are presented with a list of recently viewed accounts.

Users are sometimes concerned that they have "lost" their accounts as they expect to see them all when clicking on the **Accounts** tab and can be a little frustrated to have to click on the button marked **Go!** every time they want a list of all their accounts.



In this recipe you will see how you can override the standard **Account** tab's page and directly show a simple complete list of accounts owned by users (as part of an appropriate list view).

Not only does this recipe save users' time but it also de-clutters the screen by removing all the reports and tools links from the Salesforce Account tab's page.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a Visualforce page:

- 1. Navigate to the Visualforce Pages setup screen by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter AccountTabOverride in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default AccountTabOverride in the Name field.
- 5. Paste the following code (as shown in the screenshot further down):

```
<apex:page sidebar="true" tabStyle="Account" >
        <apex:enhancedList type="Account" height="500"
rowsPerPage="50" id="AccountList"/>
        </apex:page>
```

```
</apex:page>
```

Page Edit	Save Quick Save	Cancel Where is this used?	Component Reference	
Page Information				= Required Information
Label	AccountTabOverride			
Name				
Marrie	AccountTabOverride			
Description			*	
			~	
Available In Touch				
isualforce Markup Vers	ion Settings			
	Δ .			
	<b>A A</b>			
1 <apex:page si<="" td=""><td>debar="true" tabSty</td><td>/le="Account" &gt;</td><td></td><td></td></apex:page>	debar="true" tabSty	/le="Account" >		
			De Person	17 II / >

- 6. Click on Save.
- 7. Now set the Security for the required profiles in your organization by navigating to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.



Advanced User Interface -

8. Locate the row for the Visualforce Page **AccountTabOverride** and click the **Security** link, as shown in the following screenshot:

Action	Label 1	Name
Edit   Del   Security	AccountTabOverride	AccountTabOverride
Edit   Del   Security	AccountViewOverride	AccountViewOverride

- 9. Set the security for the required profiles.
- 10. Now, override the standard **Account** tab by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize** | **Accounts | Buttons and Links**.
- 11. On the Accounts Buttons and Links page locate the Accounts Tab row and click on Edit.
- 12. Click on the **Override With** option and select **Visualforce Page**.
- 13. Select the **AccountTabOverride** Visualforce page as shown in the following screenshot:

Override Properties	Save Cancel
Label	Accounts Tab
Name	Tab
Default	Standard Salesforce.com Page
Override With	No Override (use default)
	Visualforce Page AccountTabOverride [AccountTabOverride]
Comment	A
	Save Cancel

14. Click on Save.

- 56 -

## How it works...

When users click on the **Account** tab, there is a clutter-free page as shown in the following screenshot:

Leads Accoun	ts Contacts Opp	oortunities Foreca	sts Contracts	+ •
	unts	Edit   Delete	Create New View	Chatter
New Account	0)   F   G   H   I   J   K   L	MNOPQRS	T   U   V   W   X   Y	Z Other All
Action	Account Name ↑	Account Site	Billing State/Province	Phone
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	Acme			-
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	Burlington Textiles		NC	(336) 222-
📃 Edit   Del   😗	Dickenson plc		KS	(785) 241-
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	Edge Communicati		ТХ	(512) 757-
📃 Edit   Del   🕒	Express Logistics a		OR	(503) 421-
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	GenePoint		CA	(650) 867- =
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	Grand Hotels & Re		IL	(312) 596-
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	Pyramid Constructi			(014) 427-
📃 Edit   Del   🗸	sForce		CA	(415) 901-
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	United Oil & Gas C		NY	(212) 842-
📃 Edit   Del   🕄	United Oil & Gas, S		Singapore	(650) 450-
📃 Edit   Del   🔂	United Oil & Gas, UK		UK	+44 191 4! -
•	III			+
1-13 of 13 💌	0 Selected 💌		1	Page 1 of 1

## Showing a tabbed Account Detail page using Visualforce

Salesforce CRM provides related lists on the standard pages which are added vertically to the lower section of the page below the detail section.

57 -

Advanced User Interface -

As more and more related lists are added for an object, the sections of related list data can make the page stretch vertically and make it a challenge for users to scroll down to the page to locate the required information as shown in the following screenshot:

Leads Account	ts Contacts	Opportunities	Forecasts Con	tracts Case	s + •
A	cme	Page	e requires scroll	ing	
	F 🔛 🔀	Customi	ize Page   Edit Layout   P	rintable View   He	lp for this Page 🔞
C Show Chatte	r 🖶 Follow				
« Back to List: Pa	iges				
Contacts [1]   O	pportunities [1]   C	ases [1]   Open Ac Partn	tivities [0]   Activity Hist ners [0]	ory [0]   Notes &	<u>k Attachments [0]</u>
Account Deta	ail	Edit Delete	e		
Account Owner	System Admin	nistrator [Change]	Rating	Hot	
Account Name	Acme [View Hiera	archy]	Rating Graphic	-	
Parent Account			Phone		
Account Number			Fax		
Account Site			Website		
Туре			Ticker Symbol	CRM	
Industry			Ownership		
Annual Revenue	\$1,000,000		Employees	100,000	
Annual Revenue Graphic (	\$\$\$				
Credit Score Old	75				
Credit Score	30				
Credit Score		20			

To counter this, Salesforce provides hover links at the top of the page that allow the users to navigate via hyperlinks directly to the required related list selection further down the page. This is very useful when users are aware and dexterous enough to use its capabilities; however, some users experience navigating pages that have many related lists.

In this recipe, we will look at how you can show a Visualforce page to override the standard **Account** view and present the related list as separate tabs instead of having them rendered at the bottom of the page.

- 58

59 -

## How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a Visualforce page:

- 1. Navigate to the Visualforce Pages setup screen by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter AccountViewOverride in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default AccountViewOverride in the Name field.
- 5. Paste the following code in the formula edit box (as shown in the screenshot further below):

```
<apex:page standardController="Account" showHeader="true"
tabStyle="Account">
  <style>
    .activeTab {background-color: #236FBD; color:white;
background-image:none}
    .inactiveTab { background-color: white; color:black;
background-image:none}
  </style>
   <apex:tabPanel switchType="client" selectedTab="tabdetails"</pre>
id="AccountTabPanel" tabClass="activeTab" inactiveTabClass="inacti
veTab">
      <apex:tab label="Details" name="AccDetails" id="tabdetails">
    <apex:detail relatedList="false" relatedListHover="false"
title="true" inlineEdit="false"/>
      </apex:tab>
    <apex:tab label="Available Opportunities" name="Available</pre>
Opportunities" id="tabAvOpp">
        <apex:relatedList subject="{!account}" list="AvailableOppo
rtunities_r" />
    </apex:tab>
    <apex:tab label="Contacts" name="Contacts" id="tabContact">
        <apex:relatedList subject="{!account}" list="contacts" />
    </apex:tab>
      <apex:tab label="Open Activities" name="OpenActivities"
id="tabOpenAct">
         <apex:relatedList subject="{!account}"
list="OpenActivities" />
      </apex:tab>
      <apex:tab label="Activity History" name="ActivityHistory"</pre>
id="tabActHist" >
         <apex:relatedList subject="{!account}"
list="ActivityHistories" pageSize="15" />
```
Advanced User Interface

sualforce	e Page
age Edit	Save Quick Save Cancel Where is this used? Component Reference
age Informa	tion I = Required Informa
La	abel AccountViewOverride
Na	ame Account/iewOverride
	Accountviewovernue
Descript	lion 🔺
	Ť
eualforco Marki	Un Version Settings
suanorce marki	ab Action Serunds
	) (77   A A
1 <apex:< td=""><td>page standardController="Account" showHeader="true" tabStyle="Account"&gt;</td></apex:<>	page standardController="Account" showHeader="true" tabStyle="Account">
2 <3	tyle>
3	.activelab (background-color: #236FBD; color:white; background-image:nor
4	.inactivelab { background-color: white; color:black; background-imageing
5 4/	style>
6 <a< td=""><td>pextappanel switchiype="client" selectediap="tapdetails" id="Accountiapro</td></a<>	pextappanel switchiype="client" selectediap="tapdetails" id="Accountiapro
7	<apex:tab label="betails" name="Accounting in=" tabdetails"=""></apex:tab>
8	<pre><apex:detail id="tabOpp" name="Opportunities" opportunities"="" relatedlist="faise" relatedlisthover="faise" title="the&lt;br&gt;////////////////////////////////////&lt;/td&gt;&lt;/tr&gt;&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;9&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;/apex:tab&gt;&lt;/td&gt;&lt;/tr&gt;&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;10&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;(anautah laha)=UOssertusitianU sama=UOssertusitianU id=UtahOssU&lt;/td&gt;&lt;/tr&gt;&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;apex:tab label="></apex:detail></pre>
11	<apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"> <apex:relatedlist id="tabOpp" list="AvailableOpportunities_&lt;/td&gt;&lt;/tr&gt;&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;11&lt;br&gt;12&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;apex:tab label=" name="Opportunities" opportunities"="" subject="{!account}"> <apex:relatedlist id="tabOpp" list="AvailableOpportunities_&lt;br&gt;&lt;/apex:tab&gt;&lt;/td&gt;&lt;/tr&gt;&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;11&lt;br&gt;12&lt;br&gt;13&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;pre&gt;&lt;apex:tab label=" name="Opportunities" opportunities"="" subject="(!account)"></apex:relatedlist></apex:relatedlist></apex:tab>
11 12 13 14	<apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"> <apex:relatedlist contacts"="" id="tabContact" list="AvailableOpportunities&lt;br&gt;&lt;/apex:tab&gt;&lt;br&gt;&lt;apex:tab label=" name="Contacts" subject="{!account}"> <apex:relatedlist list="contacts" subject="{!account}"></apex:relatedlist> </apex:relatedlist></apex:tab>
11 12 13 14 15	<pre><apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"></apex:tab></pre>
11 12 13 14 15 16	<pre><apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"></apex:tab></pre>
11 12 13 14 15 16 17	<pre><apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"></apex:tab></pre>
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18	<pre><apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"></apex:tab></pre>
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19	<pre><apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"></apex:tab></pre>
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19	<pre><apex:tab id="tabOpp" label="Opportunities" name="Opportunities"></apex:tab></pre>

- 6. Now set the Security for the required profiles in your organization by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 7. Locate the row for the Visualforce Page **AccountViewOverride** and click on the **Security** link as shown in the following screenshot:

Action	Label 1	Name
Edit   Del   Security	AccountTabOverride	AccountTabOverride
Edit   Del   Security	AccountViewOverride	AccountViewOverride

60

- 8. Now, override the standard Account View by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Buttons and Links.
- 9. On the Accounts Buttons and Links page locate the Accounts View row and click on Edit.
- 10. Click on the **Override With** option and select **Visualforce Page**.
- 11. Select the **AccountViewOverride** Visualforce page as shown in the following screenshot:

erride Propertie	S Save Cancel	
Label	View	
Name	View	
Default	Standard Salesforce.com Page	
Override With	No Override (use default)	
	Visualforce Page AccountViewOverride [AccountViewOverride]	
Comment		
	+	
	Save Cancel	

12. Click on Save.

## How it works...

When users click on an account record, a tabbed page is presented as shown in the following screenshot:

ads A	ccounts	Contacts	Opportunities	Forecasts	Contracts	Cases	Solutions	Products	+	•
Acc	ount									
A V	me					Custor	nize Page   Pi	intable View   H	elp for ti	nis Page 🕜
Details	Opportuniti	es Contact	s Open Activities	Activity Hist	ory Notes a	nd Attachmen	ts			
Col	ntacts		New Conta	ct Merge Cont	acts					
Action	Contact N	ame		Tit	le	Email		Phone		
Edit   De	John Smit	h								

61 —

Advanced User Interface

## Rendering an Account credit score graphically using JavaScript, CSS, and Visualforce

Here we describe a recipe for rendering a credit score graphically using JavaScript and CSS within a Visualforce page and adding the page as an inline section on a Salesforce Account Page Layout. First, we create a custom Account credit score which will feed the values rendered in the graphical range.

#### **Getting ready**

Carry out the following steps to create a custom Credit Score field on the Account object:

1. Navigate to the Account Fields setup page by going to **Your Name | Customize |** Accounts | Fields.



Scroll down to the **Account Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



We will be presented with the **Step 1. Choose the field type** page.

- 3. Choose Number from the Data Type options.
- 4. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 2. Enter the details** page.

5. Enter Credit Score in Field Label.



#### 6. Enter 3 in the **Length** field.

New Cu	stom Field	Help for this F	age
Step 2. E	nter the details	Step	2 of
		Previous Next	Canc
Field Label	Credit Score		
	Please enter the length of the number and the number of decimal length of 8 and 2 decimal places can accept values up to "123456	places. For example, a number v 78.90".	vith a
Length	3 Decimal 0		
	Number of digits to the left of the decimal Nu point de	Imber of digits to the right of the cimal point	
Field	Credit_Score		
Description			N .
Help Text			1
	i		
Required	Always require a value in this field in order to save a record		
Unique	Do not allow duplicate values		
External ID	Set this field as the unique record identifier from an external sy	stem	
Default Value	Show Formula Editor		
	Use formula syntax: e.g., Text in double quotes: "hello", Number: 25, Percent as d	lecimal: 0.10, Date expression:	

7. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 3. Establish field-level security** page.

8. Select the profiles to which you want to grant edit access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.

63 —

Advanced User Interface

9. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 4. Add to page layouts** page. Select the page layouts that should include this field. The field will be added as the last field in the first 2-column section of these page layouts. The field will not appear on any pages if you do not select a layout.

10. Finally click on Save.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a Visualforce page:

- 1. Navigate to the Visualforce Pages setup screen by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter Credit Score in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default Credit\_Score in the Name field.
- 5. Paste the following code (as shown in the screenshot further below):

```
<apex:page standardController="Account">
   <style>
    td.green{background-color:#00FF00; border:none}
    td.red{background-color:#FF0000; border:none}
    td.grey{background-color:#DDDDDD; border:none}
    td.green_label{background-color:#00FF00; color:white;
border:1px solid white;}
    td.red label{background-color:#FF0000; color:white; border:1px
solid white;}
   </style>
                <script>
                    var iLimit = 0;
                    var iThreshold = 40;
                    if( {!Account.Credit_Score__c} )
                        iLimit = {!Account.Credit Score c};
                    document.write('
solid white; border-collapse:collapse;">');
                    document.write('');
                    for(var i=0; i<100; i=i+5) {</pre>
                        if( iLimit <= iThreshold ) {</pre>
                            if( i<iLimit )</pre>
```

64

```
document.write('
nowrap="nowrap"> ');
                     else
                        document.write('
nowrap="nowrap"> ');
                  }else{
                     if( i<iLimit )</pre>
                        document.write('
nowrap="nowrap"> ');
                     else
                        document.write('
nowrap="nowrap"> ');
                  }
               }
               iLimit <= iThreshold ? document.write('<td</pre>
class="red_label" nowrap="nowrap">&nbsp&nbsp' + iLimit +
'&nbsp&nbsp') :
                  document.write('
nowrap="nowrap">&nbsp&nbsp' + iLimit + '&nbsp&nbsp<//
table>');
            </script>
```

</apex:page>

ipCre	ditScore							
Page E	dit		Save	Quick Save	Cancel	Where is this used?	Component Reference	
Page In	nformation							= Required Information
	Label	Credit Score						
		Grount Coord		_				
	Name	Credit_Score						
	Description						~	
							*	
٥	vailable In Touch							
Q 1	→   ♠ ♠	A A	oller=	"Account"	'>			
Q 1 2 3 4 5 6	Apex:page st <style> td.green td.red{bt td.grey{t td.green</td><td>A A candardContr [background-co background-co background-co</td><td>oller= color: lor:#F plor:# round-</td><td>"Account" #00FF00; DDDDDD; bc color:#00</td><td><pre>border border:n border:n border:n border:n border:n</pre></td><td>:none} one} color:white; bor</td><td>der:1px solid whit</td><td>ie;}</td></tr><tr><td>Q 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8</td><td>A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A</td><td>A A candardContr (background-co background-co label{backgro abel{backgro</td><td>oller= color: lor:#F olor:# round-co</td><td>"Account" #00FF00; bc DDDDDD; b color:#00 lor:#FF00</td><td><pre>'> border:n border:n bFF00; 000; col</pre></td><td>:none} one} none} color:white; bor lor:white; borde</td><td>der:1px solid whit r:1px solid white;</td><td><pre>>> }</pre></td></tr><tr><td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td><td>A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A</td><td>A A candardContr (background-c ackground-c label (backgro</td><td>oller= color: lor:#F olor:# round-co</td><td>"Account" #00FF00; bc DDDDDD; b color:#00 lor:#FF00</td><td><pre>'> border:n order:n DFF00; 000; col</pre></td><td>:none} one} none} color:white; borde lor:white; borde</td><td>der:1px solid whit r:1px solid white;</td><td>re; } }</td></tr><tr><td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td><td>A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A</td><td>A A candardContr [background-co ackground-c label(backgro abel(backgro <script></td><td>oller= color: lor:#F olor:# round- und-co</td><td>"Account" #00FF00; bo F0000; bo DDDDDD; t color:#00 lor:#FF00</td><td><pre>border prder:n porder:: pFF00; 000; col</pre></td><td>:none} one} none} color:white; bor lor:white; borde</td><td>der:1px solid whit r:1px solid white;</td><td><pre>xe; } }</pre></td></tr><tr><td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11</td><td>A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A</td><td>A A candardContr (background-co background-c label(backgro label(backgro <script> var</td><td>oller= color: lor:#F olor:# round- und-co iLimit</td><td>"Account" #00FF00; bc DDDDDD; bc color:#00 lor:#FF00</td><td><pre>'> border:n order:: 0FF00; col 000; col</pre></td><td>:none} one} none} color:white; bor lor:white; borde</td><td>der:1px solid whit r:1px solid white;</td><td><pre>> } </pre></td></tr><tr><td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12</td><td>A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A</td><td>A A candardContr (background-co ackground-co label(backgrou label(backgro <script> var var</td><td>oller= color: lor:#F olor:# round- und-co iLimit</td><td>"Account" #00FF00; bc DDDDDD; b color:#00 lor:#FF00</td><td><pre>'> border:n order:n order:0) FF00; co 000; co 0;</pre></td><td>:none} one} none} color:white; bor lor:white; borde</td><td>der:1px solid whit r:1px solid white;</td><td>re; } }</td></tr><tr><td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 7 8 9 10 11 12 13</td><td>Appex:page st <style> td.green: td.red[bi td.grey[t] td.grey[t] td.grey[t] td.grey[t] </style>	A A candardContr (background-co background-co label(backgro sbel(backgro <script></script>						



Advanced User Interface -

- 6. Now set the Security for the required profiles in your organization by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 7. Locate the row for the Visualforce Page Credit Score and click on the Security link.

#### How it works...

Navigate to an **Account Detail** page and enter the value 85 in the custom **Credit Score** number field. Upon saving this, the **Account Detail** page displays the **Credit Score** image as shown in the following screenshot:

Credit Score	85	
Credit Score		85

Navigate to the **Account Detail** page (as mentioned earlier) and enter the value 40 in the **Credit Score** number field. Upon saving this, the **Account Detail** page displays the **Credit Score** image as shown in the following screenshot:

Credit Score	40	
Credit Score		40

# Presenting an Account credit score graphically using a Google image chart

This recipe presents the steps for rendering a credit score graphically using a Google Chart contained within a custom Salesforce CRM formula field. Here we are using a dial-type chart from Google called a **Google-o-meter chart**. The Google-o-meter is a gauge that points toward a single value on a range. More details can be found at https://developers.google.com/chart/image/docs/gallery/googleometer\_chart#introduction.

First, we create a custom account credit score which will feed the values rendered in the graphical range.

#### **Getting ready**

To create a custom Credit Score field on the account, follow these steps:

1. Navigate to the Account Fields setup page by going to **Your Name | Customize |** Accounts | Fields.

67 —



Scroll down to the Account **Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



We will be presented with the  $\ensuremath{\text{Step 1. Choose the field type}}$  page.

- 3. Choose Number from the Data Type options.
- 4. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 2. Enter the details** page.

- 5. Enter Credit Score in Field Label.
- 6. Enter 3 in the Length field.



Accept the default option of 0 in the **Decimal Places** field (as shown in the followings screenshot).

ew Cus	stom Field				He	lp for thi	s Page 🕜
tep 2. E	nter the details					Ste	p 2 of 4
					Previous	Next	Cancel
Field Label	Credit Score	i					
	Please enter the length o length of 8 and 2 decimal	f the number and the i I places can accept va	number of de lues up to "12	cimal places 345678.90"	. For example, a	numbe	er with a
Length	3		Decimal Places	0			
	Number of digits to the le point	ft of the decimal		Number o decimal p	of digits to the rig	ht of th	е
Field Name	Credit_Score	i					
escription							4 2
Help Text							*
	i						
Required	Always require a value	e in this field in order to	o save a reco	rd			
Unique	Do not allow duplicate	values					
External ID	Set this field as the un	ique record identifier f	rom an extern	nal system			
Default Value	Show Formula Editor						
	Use <u>formula syntax;</u> e.g., Text i Today() + 7	n double quotes: "hello", Nu	mber: 25, Perce	nt as decimal: C	0.10, Date expressio	n:	
					Bravious	Novt	Cancel

Advanced User Interface

7. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the Step 3. Establish field-level security page.

- 8. Select the profiles to which you want to grant edit access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 9. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 4. Add to page layouts** page.

- 10. Select the page layouts that should include this field. The field will be added as the last field in the first 2-column section of these page layouts. The field will not appear on any pages if you do not select a layout.
- 11. Finally click on Save.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a formula field to display a Google chart:

1. Navigate to the Account Fields setup page by going to **Your Name | Customize |** Accounts | Fields.



Scroll down to the **Account Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



We will be presented with the **Step 1. Choose the field type** page.

3. Select the Formula option.



4. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 2. Choose output type** page.

- 5. Enter Credit Score Graphic in the Field Label textbox.
- 6. Click on **Field Name**. When clicking out of the **Field Label** textbox **Field Name** is automatically filled with the value Graphic\_Score\_Graphic.
- 7. Set the Formula Return Type as Text (as shown in the following screenshot)
- 8. Click on Next.



9. Paste the following code in the formula edit box (as shown in the screenshot further below):



Advanced User Interface \_\_\_\_\_

10. In the **Blank Field Handling** section, select the option **Treat blank fields as blanks** as shown in the following screenshot:

Custom Fie	eld Definition Save Quick Save Cancel	
Field Info	rmation	= Required Information
Field Label	Credit Score Graphic	
Field Name Description	Credit_Score_Graphic	
Help Text		<u>ب</u>
	i	
Formula (	Options	
Formu Enter your for subtab to use Example:	Ila Return Type Text mula and click Check Syntax to check for errors. Click the A additional fields, operators, and functions. ull Name = LastName & ", " & FirstName More Examples . mula Advanced Formula	Advanced Formula Quick Tips <u>Getting Started</u> <u>Operators &amp; Functions</u>
Simple Po		Functions
Insert Field		All Function Categories 💌
Google Charl	t type Google-o-meter 	ABS AND BEGINS BLANKVALUE BR CASE
"&chxl=0: "&chd=t:" "&chl=" & ), "Not Specifie )	0 50 100&chxt=y&chs=200x120&chls=2 10" & & TEXT((Credit_Scorec)) & TEXT(Credit_Score_c), "Credit Score Graphic" d"	-
Check Synta	x	
Blank Fie	ld Handling	
If your formula their values a	a references any number, currency, or percent fields, specifi re blank. Treat blank fields as zeroes Treat blank fields as blanks	y what happens to the formula output when
		Previous Next Cancel



11. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 4. Establish field-level security** page.

- 12. Select the profiles to which you want to grant edit access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 13. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 5. Add to page layouts** page.

- 14. Select the page layouts that should include this field. The field will be added as the last field in the first 2-column section of these page layouts. The field will not appear on any pages if you do not select a layout.
- 15. Finally, click on **Save**.

#### How it works...

Navigate to an **Account Detail** page and enter the value 75 in the custom **Credit Score** number field. Upon saving this, the **Account Detail** page displays the **Credit Score Graphic** image as shown in the following screenshot:





Advanced User Interface

Navigate to the **Account Detail** page (as above) and enter the value 30 in the **Credit Score** number field. Upon saving this, the **Account Detail** page displays the **Credit Score Graphic** image as shown in the following screenshot:



Describing each part of the Google Chart code in the formula field gives:

The following comment section describes the code in the formula:

The following code snippet checks that the Credit Score contains a number. If so then it continues to build the Google Chart code. If there is no valid number then it returns the value "Not Specified".

```
IF(
   ISNUMBER( TEXT(Credit_Score_c) ),
<.....>"Not Specified"
)
```

- 72

73 -

The following code snippet is for Google Chart image construction:

```
IMAGE(
    "http://chart.apis.google.com/chart?cht=gm" &
    "&chxl=0:|0|50|100&chxt=y&chs=200x120&chls=2|10" &
    "&chd=t:" & TEXT((Credit_Score_c)) &
    "&chl=" & TEXT(Credit_Score_c), "Credit Score Graphic"),
```

Use the Google Chart URL:

http://chart.apis.google.com/chart?

The following line specifies the chart type gm (Google-O-meter):

cht=gm

The following line sets the labels for the chart:

```
chxl=0: 0 50 100
```

The following line specifies using the Y-axis:

chxt=y

The following line sets the dimensions for the chart (width x height):

```
chs=200x120
```

The following line specifies the arrow line width and arrow head (2px line and small arrow head):

chls=2|10

The following line sets the data value passed to the graph (the data from the **Credit Score** field is passed):

```
chd=t:" & TEXT((Credit_Score__c))
```

The following line specifies the data label on the chart (the data from the **Credit Score** field is passed):

```
chl=" & TEXT(Credit_Score___c)
```

#### There's more...

For more information to create other types of Google charts, navigate to:

http://imagecharteditor.appspot.com/



Accessing Google Charts requires sending data from Salesforce over the Internet, so it is not secure. You should ensure that only non-sensitive data is being sent. Advanced User Interface -

In Internet Explorer, there is security built in to check for HTTP/HTTPS mixed content. Salesforce uses HTTPS which is secure and as described earlier the Google Chart website uses HTTP which is not secured using SSL encryption. Internet Explorer may generate a warning for each user's browser which you can suppress using the following tip.

	How do I suppress browser security warnings in Internet Explorer?
	By default, Internet Explorer displays the following security warning message when a page contains a mixture of secure (HTTPS) and non-secure (HTTP) content:
	This page contains both secure and non-secure items. Do you want to display the non secure items?
	When you create a mash-up with a non-secure URL, users may see this warning message, depending on their browser security settings. To suppress this warning in Internet Explorer, follow these steps:
<u>\L</u>	<ul> <li>Click on the Security tab and click on the Custom Level button.</li> <li>Finally, in the Miscellaneous section, set Display Mixed Content to Enable.</li> <li>See the following screenshot:</li> </ul>
	Security Settings - Internet Zone
	Enable     Allow webpages to use restricted protocols for active conten     Disable     Enable     Enable     Disable     Disable     Disable     Disable     Disable     Disable     Disable     Don't prompt for client certificate selection when only one ce     Disable     Dan't prompt for client certificate selection when only one ce     Disable     Trakes effect after you restart Internet Explorer  Reset custom settings Reset to:     Medium-high (default)     Medium-high (default)     CK     Cancel

- 74

# **3** Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- Extending the year range to 2025 on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce
- Populating a historic year range from 1920 on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce
- Creating a custom Log A Call button from accounts with prepopulated fields
- Presenting an integrated view of cases on the home page
- ▶ Removing the "discover what's new in this release" button from the home page

## Introduction

In this curiously-titled chapter, we cover recipes that are intended to deal with some aspects of Salesforce that can only be applied or implemented by using non-supported methods.

Anything that is applied to Salesforce but which is not supported should be considered a risk and should only be used with caution for they constitute a "hack", which is described at http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hack\_%28computer\_science%29#In\_ computer\_science as:

In modern computing terminology, a kludge (or often a "hack") is a solution to a problem, doing a task, or fixing a system that [...] (more or less) works.



Remember these hidden features or hacks are not supported by Salesforce.

Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

## Extending the year range to 2025 on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce

Salesforce.com provides many useful field types from formulae and roll-up summaries to the simple URL field. One field that can be a little frustrating for users, due to the way it allows only a limited selection of year values to be chosen from the pick list, is the date field.

When clicking on a date field, the user is automatically presented with a pop up calendar and when selecting the year pick list, they can only select from a range of seven years. The seven-year range is based on the current year.

The minimum year selectable is the year prior to the current year and the maximum value of year that can be selected is the current year plus five years.



This is not useful for trying to enter dates further than five years into the future.

## For example, when accessing the calendar in 2012, the year range is from 2011 to 2017 as shown in the following screenshot:



There are many business requirements to choose dates further than five years into the future and so this feature poses user experience issues.

Here we are going to improve the user experience and enable future years to be selected.



#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to extend the year range on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown).

The **Next** button is found on the **Understanding Custom Components** splash screen (this page is only shown if the checkbox **Don't show this page again** has not been previously checked) as shown in the following screenshot:

anding Custom Components	r this Page 🕜
your own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" lor the home page to different user profiles.	and can
Description	
One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to rele industry news sites)	vant
An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)	
A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
w this page again	Next
	IIII
	Help for our own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" for the home page to different user profiles. Description One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to rele industry news sites) An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo) A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired w this page again



- 4. Enter the name of the **Custom Component** in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Calendar Year Extender.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- 7. Ensure the **Narrow (Left) Column** option is selected within the **Component Position** option list.





Note that you are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the Show HTML checkbox.



9. Paste the following code in the custom component textbox:

```
<br><br><br><br><br><script type="text/javascript">function insert(pobjSelect, psText, psValue){var lobjOption = document.createElement("Option");lobjOption.text = psText;lobjOption.value = psValue;pobjSelect.options.add(lobjOption);}var winLoaded = window.onload;window.onload = function() {if(winLoaded) {winLoaded();}
```

- 78

```
var e = document.getElementById("calYearPicker");
if(e != null) {
  var d = new Date();
  var startYear = d.getFullYear() + 6;
  for(var i=startYear; i < 2026; i++) {
    insert(e, i, i);
  }
}
</script>
```

This is shown in the following screenshot:

ep 2. New oustoin components			
	Previous	Save	Ca
Component Position:			
<ul> <li>Wide (Right) Column</li> <li>Narrow (Left) Column</li> </ul>			
Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed H in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.	ITML. Poorly	written I	нтм
Formatting Controls [How to use this]		V Sho	w HT
winLoaded();	(		_
}			
var e = document.getElementById("calYearPicker");			
var d = new Date();			
var startYear = d.getFullYear() + 6; for(var i=startYear: i < 2026: i++){			
insert(e, i, i);			
}			
, 			

10. Click on Save.



We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

11. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts**.



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here, in the following screenshot, we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**:

ŀ	lome l	<sup>D</sup> age L	ayouts	Help for this Page 🥑	
Tł	nis page allo	ows you to c	reate different tab layouts for t	he Home Tab.	
	$A \mid B \mid C \mid D \mid E \mid F \mid G \mid H \mid I \mid J \mid K \mid L \mid M \mid N \mid O \mid P \mid Q \mid R \mid S \mid T \mid U \mid V \mid W \mid X \mid Y \mid Z \mid Other \boxed{All}$				
			Page Layout Assignme	nt New	
	Action	Name 🛧	Created By	Last Modified By	
	Edit   Del	DE Default	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 14/07/2012 16:15	
	A   B   C	D   E   F   G	$H \mid I \mid J \mid K \mid L \mid M \mid N \mid O \mid P \mid Q \mid$	$R \mid S \mid T \mid U \mid V \mid W \mid X \mid Y \mid Z \mid Other  \textbf{All}$	



We are presented with the **Step 1. Select the components to show** page.

13. Check the **Calendar Year Extender** checkbox in the **Select Narrow Components to Show** section as shown:

Components to Show
$\checkmark$

14. Click on Next.



We are presented with the **Step 2. Order the components** page.

80

15. Position the **Calendar Year Extender** option at the lowest position in the **Narrow** (Left) Column text area using the **Arrange the components on your home page** section as shown in the following screenshot:

onents	
ur home	page.
	W
Top Up Down Bottom	Calenc Tasks Items t Chatte
	Top Top Down Down Bottom

16. Finally, click on Save.

## How it works...

By using JavaScript, we are able to override the standard year pick list options. You can see what this looks like in the following screenshot:

Ľ				[ <u>08/(</u>	09/20	<u>12</u> ]	
	< S	epte	mbe	r 💌	>	2012 💌	]
١	Mon 27	Tue 28	Wed 29	Thu 30	Fri 31	2011 2012 2013	
	3 10	4	5 12	6 13	7	2014 2015	
	17 24	18 25	19 26	20 27 Today	21 28	2016 2017 2018	
L		_	_	rouuy		2010 2019 2020	-
						2021 2022 2022	
						2023 2024 2025	



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

#### There's more...

If you wish to shorten or extend the year range, you can modify the highlighted section of the code and replace it with a suitable value of your choice:

```
war startYear = d.getFullYear() + 6;
for(var i=startYear; i < 2026; i++){
    insert(e, i, i);
...</pre>
```

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard), you must ensure that the code is valid.



Please ensure that the HTML code entered is valid and well formed. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire **Home** tab to appear incorrectly.

There is a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.

This solution will extend the year range for all pages where you are able to display a sidebar, hence it will not work for pages where there is no sidebar such as the **Reports** tab.



Remember this hidden feature or hack is not supported by Salesforce.

#### See also

 The Populating a historic year range from 1920 on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce recipe in this chapter

## Populating a historic year range from 1920 on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce

Salesforce.com provides many useful field types from formulae and roll-up summaries to the simple URL field. One field that can be a little frustrating for users, due to the way it only allows a limited selection of year values to be chosen from the pick list, is the date field.



83 -

When clicking on a date field, the user is automatically presented with a pop up calendar and when selecting the year pick list, they can only select from a range of seven years. The seven-year range is based on the current year.

The minimum year selectable is the year prior to the current year and the maximum value of year that can be selected is the current year plus five years.

This is not useful for trying to enter historic dates such as birth dates.

For example, when accessing the calendar in 2012, the year range is from 2011 to 2017 as shown:



There are many business requirements to choose historical dates and so this feature poses user experience issues.

Here we are going to improve the user experience and enable historic years to be selected with this recipe.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to show historic year selections on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Home** | **Home Page Components**.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown).

The **Next** button is found on the **Understanding Custom Components** splash screen (this page is only shown if the checkbox **Don't show this page again** has not been previously checked) as in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components
You can add y be used to tai	our own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" and can lor the home page to different user profiles.
Туре	Description
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to relevant industry news sites)
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired
Don't sho	w this page again
	Next

> Here, we are presented with the Step 1. New Custom Components page.

- 4. Enter the **Custom Component** name in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Calendar Year Historic.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- 7. Ensure the Narrow (Left) Column option is selected within the Component Position option list.



Note that you are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the **Show HTML** checkbox.

The previous step is important! Locate and check the **Show HTML** checkbox as shown in the following screenshot:





84

9. Paste the following code:

```
<br>
<script type="text/javascript">
function insert(pobjSelect, psText, psValue){
var lobjOption = document.createElement("Option");
lobjOption.text = psText;
 lobjOption.value = psValue;
 pobjSelect.options.add(lobjOption);
}
var winLoaded = window.onload;
window.onload = function() {
if(winLoaded){
 winLoaded();
 }
 var e = document.getElementById("calYearPicker");
 if(e != null) {
  for (i = wavelength - 1; i \ge 0; i - -)
   e.remove(i);
  }
```

85 -

Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features \_\_\_\_\_

```
var d = new Date();
var startYear = d.getFullYear() + 6;
for(var i = 1920; i<startYear; i++){
    insert(e, i, i);
    }
}
</script>
```

This is shown in the following screenshot:

tep 2. New Custom Components	Step 2 o
	Previous Save Can
Component Position:	
<ul> <li>Wide (Right) Column</li> <li>Narrow (Left) Column</li> </ul>	
Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is vali written HTML in this component may cause the entire H	d, well formed HTML. Poorly ome tab to appear incorrectly.
Formatting Controls [How to use this]	Show HTM
window.onload = function(){ if(winLoaded){ winLoaded(); }	
var e = document.getElementById("calYearPicker"); if(e != null){ var d = pow Date();	
var d = new Date(), var startYear = d.getFullYear() - 2; for(var i=1920;i <startyear;i++){< td=""><td></td></startyear;i++){<>	
insert(e,i,i); } }	
	Previous Save Can

10. Click on Save.



We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 11. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Home** | **Home Page Layouts**.
- 12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here, as shown in the following screenshot, we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**:

Home Page L	Home Page Layouts Help for this Page 📀					
This page allows you to o	create different tab layouts for t	he Home Tab.				
A   B   C   D   E   F   G	$H \mid I \mid J \mid K \mid L \mid M \mid N \mid O \mid P \mid Q \mid$	$R \mid S \mid T \mid U \mid V \mid W \mid X \mid Y \mid Z \mid Other  \textbf{All}$				
	Page Layout Assignme	nt New				
Action Name +	Created By	Last Modified By				
Edit   Del DE Default	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 14/07/2012 16:15				
A   B   C   D   E   F   G	H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q	R   S   T   U   V   W   X   Y   Z   Other <b>All</b>				



We are presented with the **Step 1. Select the components to show** page.

13. Check the **Calendar Year Historic** checkbox in the **Select Narrow Components to Show** section as shown:

Select Narrow Componer	nts to Show
Create New	
Messages & Alerts	
Tags	<b>V</b>
Calendar Year Historic	

14. Click on Next.



87 —

Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

15. Position the **Calendar Year Historic** at the lowest position in the **Narrow (Left) Column** text area using the **Arrange the component on your home page** section as shown:



#### 16. Click on Save.

#### How it works...

By using JavaScript, we are able to override the standard year pick list options. You can see what this looks like in the following screenshot:



#### Chapter 3

#### There's more...

•••

If you wish to shorten or extend the year range, you can modify the highlighted section of the code and replace it with a suitable value of your choice:

```
var startYear = d.getFullYear() + 6;
for(var i = 1920; i<startYear; i++){
    insert(e, i, i);
...
```

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard), you must ensure that the code is valid.



Please ensure that the HTML code entered is valid and well formed. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire **Home** tab to appear incorrectly.

There is a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.

This solution will show the historic year range for all pages where you are able to display a sidebar, hence it will not work for pages where there is no sidebar such as the **Reports** tab.



Remember this hidden feature or hack is *not* supported by Salesforce.

#### See also

 The Extending the year range to 2025 on calendar pop ups for all date fields in Salesforce recipe in this chapter

## Creating a custom Log A Call button from accounts with prepopulated fields

There is a standard Salesforce **Log A Call** button that allows users to log a call from an account details page which is accessed from the **Activity History** related list.



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

However, finding and then using this button can be difficult and is not immediately obvious for less experienced users of Salesforce CRM. This requires navigation to the following screen:

C Sho	w Chatter   🔒 Foll	ow					
« Back to	List: Custom Ho	me Pages					
	Contacts [	1]   Opportu	nities [1]   Cases	[2]   <u>Ope</u>	en Activities [0]	Activity History [3]	No
Activity I	History		Log A Cal	I Mail M	erge Send An E	mail View All	
Action	Subject	Name	Related To	Task	Due Date	Assigned To	

This recipe not only allows the option to "log a call" directly from the account details page, but it also allows you to set prepopulated fields on the call task information. In addition, it allows the removal of the follow-up task section (as shown in the following screenshot) which is often considered unnecessary by users:

Schedule follow up task				
Task Information				
Assigned To	System Administrator			
Subject	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
Due Date	[ 09/09/2012 ]			
Priority	Normal 💌			

#### How to do it...

Using the following steps, we are going to simplify the Log A Call feature with "URL hacking" from a custom button on the account page and improve the user experience:

1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Accounts** | **Buttons and Links**.



Scroll down the page to the Custom Buttons and Links section.

2. Click on New.





- 3. Enter the label for the button in the **Label** field. For this recipe, type the text Log A Call.
- 4. Accept the default value in the Name field which is automatically set as Log\_A\_Call.
- 5. Choose the Detail Page Button option from the Display Type options list.
- 6. Select the **Display in existing window without sidebar or header** selection from the **Behavior** pick list.
- 7. Accept the default selection of URL from the Content Source pick list.
- 8. Paste the following code in the text area given:

```
/00T/e
?what_id={!Account.Id}
&tsk5="Call to "{!Account.Name}
&tsk10=Call
&tsk12=Completed
&retURL={!Account.Id}
```

This is shown in the following screenshot:

Custom Button or Link	Edit Save Quick Save Preview Cancel	
Label	Log A Call	
Name	Log_A_Call	
Description	A	
Display Type	<ul> <li>Detail Page Link <u>View example</u></li> <li>Detail Page Button <u>View example</u></li> </ul>	
	List Button <u>View example</u>	
Behavior	Display in existing window without sidebar or header 💌 Vie	ew E
Content Source	URL 🔹	
Select Field Type Account	Insert Field   Insert Merge Field  Insert Operator	
/00T/e ?what_id={IAccount.Id} &tsk5="Call to "{IAccount.Na &tsk10=Call &tsk12=Completed &retURL={IAccount.Id}	ime}	
Check Syntax		
Link Encoding Unicode (U	FF-8)	
Link Encoding Unicode (U	FF-8)  Save Quick Save Preview Cancel	



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features

9. Click on Save.



A pop up message appears stating **The new custom button will not be displayed to users until you add it to the page layout**.

- 10. On the pop up dialog, click on OK.
- 11. Navigate to the account page layout setup page, by following the path, **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Accounts** | **Page Layouts**.
- 12. Determine which account page layout to place the custom button in and click on **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **Account Layout**.



- 13. Click on the **Buttons** text at the top-left section of the page as shown in the upcoming screenshot.
- 14. Locate the **Log A Call** button and drag it to the **Custom Buttons** section as shown in the following screenshot:



15. Finally, click on Save.



## How it works...

Clicking on an account record, we are presented with a Log A Call custom button as shown:



Upon clicking the **Log A Call** button, the user is presented with a **Task Edit** page with prepopulated values for **Status** and **Subject** as shown:

Task Edit         Save         Save & New Task         Save & New Event         Cancel	
Task Information	Required Information
Assigned To System Administrator Status Completed	
Subject Call to Acme 🐨 Name Contact 💌	<u>_</u>
Due Date [09/09/2012] Related To Account Acce	<u>S</u>
Phone Email	
Priority Normal	
Description Information	
Comments	*
Send Notification Email	
Recurrence	
Create Recurring Series of Tasks	
Reminder	
Reminder 09/09/2012 08:00 💌	



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

#### There's more...

In addition to the prepopulated fields, there is no unnecessary section requiring a follow-up task to be entered.



Remember this hidden feature or hack is not supported by Salesforce.

## Presenting an integrated view of cases on the home page

Users often want a simple integrated set of data on their home pages and in particular a way of quickly seeing new cases that have been assigned to them or their team.

For a very quick and easy way of displaying new cases for users on the home page, it is possible to embed the **Case** tab within a home page component using the standard Salesforce **Case** page, but without header or sidebar information.



Note this approach is not supported by Salesforce and you should consider this use with care as it cannot be relied upon for future use.

To save users' time and showcase information directly on the home page every time they access the **Home** tab, create this custom home page component with this recipe.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to present an integrated view of cases on the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page by going to **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Home** | **Home Page Components**.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown).



The **Next** button is found on the **Understanding Custom Components** splash screen (this page is only shown if the checkbox **Don't show this page again** has not been checked previously) as in the following screenshot:

Underst	anding Custom Components	age 🕜
You can add y be used to tai	your own components to a home page. These are called "custom components" and o ilor the home page to different user profiles.	an
Туре	Description	
Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, or to relevant industry news sites)	
Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your company logo)	
HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
🔲 Don't sho	w this page again	
		Next



Here, we are presented with the **Step 1. New Custom Components** page.

- 4. Enter the name of the **Custom Component** in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Cases Section.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- 7. Ensure the **Wide (Right) Column** option is selected within the **Component Position** option list.



Note that you are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the Show HTML checkbox.




Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

9. Paste the following code in the text area:

```
<iframe height="520" src="/500/o?isdtp=vw" frameBorder="0" width="100%"></iframe>
```

This is shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2. New Custom Components	Step 2 of 2
	Previous Save Cancel
Component Position:  Wide (Right) Column Narrow (Left) Column	
Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed HTML component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly.	L. Poorly written HTML in this
Formatting Controls [How to use this]	Show HTML
<iframe <="" frameborder="0" height="520" src="/500/o?isdtp=vw" td="" width="100"><td>%"&gt;</td></iframe>	%">
	Previous Save Cancel

10. Click on Save.



We now need to add the custom home page component to a home page layout.

- 11. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by following the path, Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts.
- 12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on **Edit**. Here we are editing the home page layout named **DE Default**:



We are presented with the **Step 1. Select the components to show** page.



13. Check the **Cases Section** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section as shown:



- 14. Click on Next.
- 15. Position **Cases Section** at the top position in the **Wide (Right) Column** text area using the **Arrange the component on your home page** section as shown:

Step 2. Order the comp	onents	Step 2 of 2
Arrange the components on yo	ur home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column Create New Tags Recent Items Custom Links Calendar Year Historic	Wide (Right) Colu Top Cases Section Calendar Tasks Items to Approve Down Sottom	mn Top Up Op Down Sottom
	Previous Save &	Assign Save Preview Cancel

16. Click on Save.



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features

How it works...

This recipe makes use of HTML to create an iframe which is a way of embedding other HTML pages or sections of HTML code either from within Salesforce or pulled from a server external to Salesforce.

Here the location we are using is the standard **Case** tab but with the additional parameter isdtp. This parameter is a Salesforce-specific parameter that presents the content without a header or sidebar.

The isdtp parameter is typically used behind the scenes to render the pages that are displayed on the Salesforce **Service Cloud** and **Console** tabs.

You can see what this looks like when the **Home** tab is selected as shown in the following screenshot:



### There's more...

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard), you must ensure that the code is valid.



Please ensure that the HTML code entered is valid and well formed. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire **Home** tab to appear incorrectly.

There is a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.



Remember this hidden feature or hack is not supported by Salesforce.

### Removing the "discover what's new in this release" button from the home page

There is a "discover what's new in this release" button on the home page shown by default for all users regardless of their profile in Salesforce. The button provides a link to a web page in Salesforce that contains information and various resources for the new features and changes that have been introduced in the latest release. However, since there is no option to hide this button, it can sometimes be a little confusing or irritating for some users.

The button appears with the following text: **Discover Spring '13** (**Spring '13** was the latest Salesforce CRM release at the time of writing), and is presented at the top-right corner of the home page as shown in the following screenshot:

← → https://eu1.salesforce.com/home/home.jsp	lesforce.com - Enterprise 🗙 🟠 🏠 😳
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>I</u> ools <u>H</u> elp	
Salesforce Search Paul Goodey +	Help & Training Sales
Home Chatter Files Campaigns Leads Contacts Reports Dashboards	+
Paul Goodey Sunday 24 February 2013	Discover Spring 113
Jr- Show Feed	
My Tasks	Today 🔻
You have no open tasks scheduled for this period.	
Calendar New Event	Calendar Help 🕐
Today 24/02/2013	← February 2013 > Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun
	28 29 30 31 01 02 03 🔫

99

Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to remove the "discover what's new in this release" button from the home page:

- 1. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Components**.
- 2. Click on New.



The **New** button is found by scrolling down the page to the **Custom Components** section.

3. Click on Next (on the Understanding Custom Components splash screen if shown).

The **Next** button is found on the **Understanding Custom Components** splash screen (this page is only shown if the checkbox **Don't show this page again** has not been checked previously) as in the following screenshot:

ι	Inderst	anding Custom Components	Help for this Page 🕜
	You can add y be used to tai	our own components to a home page. These are called "custom com lor the home page to different user profiles.	ponents" and can
	Туре	Description	
	Links	One or more custom links (Example: a link to your company intranet, industry news sites)	or to relevant
	Image/Logo	An image that will be displayed in the sidebar (Example: your compa	iny logo)
	HTML Area	A free-form area displaying any custom HTML content desired	
	Don't show	v this page again	
			Next



Here, we are presented with the **Step 1. New Custom Components** page.

-100

- 4. Enter the name of the **Custom Component** in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Hide Whats New Button.
- 5. Select the HTML Area option from the Type options list.
- 6. Click on Next.
- 7. Ensure the **Wide (Right) Column** option is selected within the **Component Position** option list.



Note that you are unable to change this setting after the component is created.

8. Check the **Show HTML** checkbox.



</script>

The previous step is important! Locate and check the  ${\bf Show}$   ${\bf HTML}$  checkbox as shown in the following screenshot:

appea	ar incorrectly.	
	Show HTML	
	^	ľ

9. Paste the following code in the text area:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
var e=document.getElementsByTagName("input");
for(var i=0;i<e.length;i++) {
    if(e[i].name=="whats_new") {
        e[i].style.display='none';
        break;
    }
}</pre>
```



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

This is shown in the following screenshot:

tep 2. New Custom Components	Step 2 of 2
	Previous Save Cancel
Component Position:	
<ul> <li>Wide (Right) Column</li> <li>Narrow (Left) Column</li> </ul>	
Please ensure that the HTML code entered below is valid, well formed in this component may cause the entire Home tab to appear incorrectly	HTML. Poorly written HTML
Formatting Controls [How to use this]	V Show HTML
<script type="text/javascript"> var e=document.getElementsByTagName("input"); for(var i=0;i<e.length;i++){ if(e[i].name=="whats_new"){ e[i].style.display='none'; break; } } </script>	
	Previous Save Cancel

10. Click on Save.



11. Navigate to the home page components setup page, by following the path, **Your** 

Name | Setup | Customize | Home | Home Page Layouts.
12. Determine which home page layout to place the component on and click on Edit. Here we are editing the home page layout named DE Default:

-102



We are presented with the Step 1. Select the components to show page.

13. Check the **Hide Whats New Button** checkbox in the **Select Wide Components to Show** section as shown in the following screenshot:

Select Wide Compo	onents to Show
Items to Approve	
Tasks	
Accounts Section	
Hide Whats New Button	

- 14. Click on Next.
- 15. Position the **Hide Developer Button** at the top position in the **Wide (Right) Column** text area using the **Arrange the component on your home page.** section as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2. Order the comp	onents	
Arrange the components on yo	our home page.	
Narrow (Left) Column Create New Tags Recent Items Custom Links	Wide (Right) Column Top Calendar Tasks Up Hide Whats New Button	Top Dp

16. Finally, click on Save.



Exposing Hacks and Hidden Features -

### How it works...

You can see that the "discover what's new in this release" button is now removed and what this looks like when the **Home** tab is selected as shown in the following screenshot:

Image: Antiperiod of the second se	<b>n</b> /home/home.jsp	P → ● ♂ × ○ salesforce.com - Enterprise ×
e <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help	
salesforce		Search Paul Goodey • Help & Training Sales •
Home Chatter Files Can	npaigns Leads Contacts	Reports Dashboards +
Paul Goodey Sunday 24 February 2013		
My Tasks	New	Today 👻
	You have no open tas	ks scheduled for this period.
Calendar	New Event	Calendar Help 🕐
Today 24/02/2013		< February 2013 >
You have no events scheduled f	or the next 7 days.	Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun 28 29 30 31 01 02 03

### There's more...

When entering HTML and JavaScript code into the HTML editor section (in step 2 of the **New Custom Component** wizard), you must ensure that the code is valid.



Please ensure that the HTML code entered is valid and well formed. Poorly written HTML in this component may cause the entire **Home** tab to appear incorrectly.

There is a maximum of 20 custom components that can be added to a home page layout.



Remember this hidden feature or hack is not supported by Salesforce.

### See also

• The Removing chatter feeds from the home page recipe in Chapter 1, Working with Home Page Components and Custom Links



In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- > Deriving year and month values from the opportunity close date using a formula
- > Calculating the week number for the opportunity close date using a formula
- Creating an opportunity close date e-mail alert using workflow
- > Setting a default opportunity name using a field update workflow
- Generating a default opportunity close date using a field update workflow

### Introduction

A CRM system must be as productive as possible to justify its investment, hence, if there are any aspects that can be configured and set up to be used more efficiently, they are usually worth exploring.

The Salesforce CRM application aims to be as efficient as possible out of the box, however, typically there are company-specific business rules and process flows that need to be implemented.

This is where the power of the Salesforce CRM application and the Force.com platform becomes truly apparent.

Within the Salesforce CRM application and the Force.com platform, you can easily create workflow to trigger your company's unique business rules and logic.

Salesforce CRM also enables you to create complex formulae to generate data records as well as extend the user interface to create custom buttons that prepopulate data fields.

# Deriving year and month values from the opportunity close date using a formula

To simplify the format of dates for presentation and reporting, we can derive the year and month from the date element.

In this recipe, we will display a derived year and month text string for the opportunity close date, on the opportunity record detail page, calculated from the standard date field called CloseDate.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to derive the year and month values from the opportunity close date using a formula:

1. Navigate to the opportunity customization setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup** | **Customize | Opportunities | Fields**.



Scroll down to the opportunity **Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



We are presented with the **Step 1. Choose the field type** page.

- 3. Select the Formula option.
- 4. Click on Next.



We are presented with the **Step 2. Choose output type** page.

- 5. Type Close Date Year Month in the Field Label textbox.
- 6. Click on the **Field Name**. When clicking out of the **Field Label** textbox the **Field Name** is automatically filled with the value **Close\_Date\_Year\_Month**.
- 7. Set the formula return type as **Text**.
- 8. Click on Next.





### 9. Paste the following code in the formula editor box:

```
TEXT(YEAR(CloseDate)) & " " &
CASE(
MONTH(CloseDate),
1, "January",
2, "February",
3, "March",
4, "April",
5, "May",
6, "June",
7, "July",
8, "August",
9, "September",
10, "October",
11, "November",
```

```
12, "December", "Error!")
```

This is shown in the following screenshot:





- 10. In the Blank Field Handling section, select the option Treat blank fields as blanks.
- 11. Click on Next.



We are presented with the **Step 4. Establish** field-level security page.

- 12. Select the profiles to which you want to grant read access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 13. Finally, click on Save.

#### How it works...

The formula field appears on the opportunity detail page.

You can see what this looks like in the following image:



### Calculating the week number for the opportunity close date using a formula

In this recipe, we will display the week number according to the opportunity close date on the opportunity record detail page, where the week number is calculated from the standard date field called CloseDate.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to calculate the week number for the opportunity close date using a formula:

1. Navigate to the opportunity customization setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup** | **Customize | Opportunities | Fields**.



Scroll down to the **Opportunity Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



- 3. Select the Formula option.
- 4. Click on Next.



We are presented with the **Step 2. Choose output type** page.

- 5. Type Close Date Week Number in the Field Label textbox.
- 6. Click on the **Field Name** textbox. When clicking out of the **Field Label** textbox, the **Field Name** textbox is automatically filled with the value **Close\_Date\_Week\_Number**.
- 7. Set Formula Return Type as Number.
- 8. Set Decimal Places to 0 in the Options section as shown in the following screenshot:

Step	2. Choose o	output type Step 2 of 5
		Previous Next Cancel
	Field Label	lose Date Week Number Field Name se_Date_Week_Number i
Form	ula Return 1	Гуре
$\bigcirc$	None Selected	Select one of the data types below.
0	Currency	Calculate a dollar or other currency amount and automatically format the field as a currency amount. Example:  Gross Margin = Amount - Cost_c
0	Date	Calculate a date, for example, by adding or subtracting days to other dates. Example: Reminder Date = CloseDate - 7
0	Date/Time	Calculate a date/time, for example, by adding a number of hours or days to another date/time. Example: Next = NOW() + 1
۲	Number	Calculate a numeric value. Example: [Fahrenheit = 1.8 * Celsius_c + 32]
۲	Percent	Calculate a percent and automatically add the percent sign to the number. Example: [Discount = (Amount - Discounted_Amountc) / Amount]
0	Text	Create a text string, for example, by concatenating other text fields. Example: [Full Name = LastName & ", " & FirstName]
Opt	ions	Decimal Places 0 💌 Example: 999

9. Click on Next.





10. Paste the following code in the formula editor box:

This is shown in the following screenshot:



-110-

- 11. In the Blank Field Handling section, select the option Treat blank fields as zeroes.
- 12. Click on Next.



- 13. Select the profiles to which you want to grant read access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 14. Finally, click on Save.

### How it works...

The formula field appears on the opportunity detail page.

As an example, you can see how this appears as week **3** for a CloseDate value of **16/01/2012** as in the following screenshot:



Another example shows how this appears as week **8** for a CloseDate value of **16/02/2015** as in the following screenshot:



### Creating an opportunity close date e-mail alert using workflow

As best practice in CRM systems, when creating sales opportunities there should always be a close date with which we can forecast, report, and monitor the progress of the sale.

In Salesforce CRM, the close date can be referred to in order to automatically trigger an e-mail that alerts the opportunity owner that the sales opportunity is nearing the scheduled close date.

To create this automatic sending of close date e-mail alerts, the following recipe makes use of a Salesforce workflow rule and e-mail alert.



### **Getting ready**

Create an e-mail template using the following steps:

- Navigate to the new e-mail template creation page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Email | My Templates.
- 2. Select My Personal Email Templates from the Folder drop-down list.
- 3. Click on the **New Template** button as shown in the following screenshot:

My Personal Email Templates	Help for this Page 🕜
Below is a list of all your email templates in the folder selected. Click the new t text, HTML, Custom, or Visualforce email template. You can use these email t sending single emails. For mass emails, only text, HTML, and Custom templat	outton to create a new emplates when es may be used.
Folder My Personal Email Templates 💌 Create New Folder	
A   B   C   D   E   F   G   H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q   R   S   T   U   V   W	X Y Z Other All
New Template	
Email Template Name	er Last Modified Date
No records to display.	
A   B   C   D   E   F   G   H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q   R   S   T   U   V   W	X   Y   Z   Other All



Here, we are presented with the **Step 1: Email Template: New Template** page.

4. Choose the Text option and click on the Next button.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 2: Text Email Template: New Template** page.

- 5. Choose the Unfiled Public Email Templates option from the Folder drop-down list.
- 6. Set the checkbox Available For Use.
- 7. Enter the name of the e-mail template in the **Email Template Name** field. In this recipe, type the text Alert Opportunity Close Date.
- 8. Accept the default text Alert\_Opportunity\_Close\_Date that is automatically set in the **Template Unique Name** field.
- 9. Optionally, enter a description in the **Description** field.
- 10. Enter the subject for the e-mail in the **Subject** field. In this recipe, type the text Alert Opportunity Close Date.



11. In the Email Body text area, enter the following code:

```
{!Today}
Dear {!User.FirstName},
The close date for the opportunity, {!Opportunity.Name} for the
account {!Opportunity.Account.Name} is due within 21 days.
Sincerely
```

Salesforce System Administrator

This is shown in the following screenshot:

		Previous Save Can
imail Templa	te Information	= Required Informat
Folder Available For Use Email Template Name Template Unique Name Encoding	Unfiled Public Email Templates  V It Opportunity Close Date Opportunity_Close_Date General US & Western Europe (ISO-8859-1, ISO	-LATIN-1)
Description Subject	Alert Opportunity Close Date	
Email Body	(Today) Dear (IUser FirstName), The close date for the opportunity, (IOpportunity Name account (IOpportunity, Account_Name) is due within 21 Sincerely Salesforce System Administrator	e) for the days. ■

12. Click on Save.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create an opportunity close date e-mail alert using workflow:

- 1. Navigate to the workflow setup page, by going Your Name | Setup | Create | Workflow & Approvals | Workflow Rules.
- 2. Click on Continue (if shown).



The **Continue** button is found on the **Understanding Workflow** page (if this is shown) as in the following screenshot:

nderstanding Workflow	Help for this Pa
vlany of the tasks you normally assign, the emails you regularly send, and other record updates are part of your organization nstead of doing this work manually, you can configure workflow to do it automatically.	's standard processes.
What is Workflow?	
Norkflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes:	
:: Tasks-Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner.	
:: Email Alerts-Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.	
:: Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.	
:: Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.	
For example, workflow can:	
:: Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.	
: Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.	
: Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.	
:: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved ex	pense report.
Each workflow rule consists of:	
:: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.	
:: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically se	end an email that notifies
the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.	
: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For ex	cample, salesforce.com
can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the	e close date.
☑ Don't show me this page again	
Continue	

3. Click on New Rule.



4. Select **Opportunity** and click on **Next** as shown in the following screenshot:

New Workflow Rule	Help for this Page 🕜
Step 1: Select object	Step 1 of 3
	Next Cancel
Select the object to which this workflow rule applies.	
Select object Opportunity	
	Next Cancel





Here, we are presented with the **Step 2: Configure Workflow Rule** page.

- 5. Enter the name of the new workflow rule in the **Rule Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Alert Opportunity Close Date.
- 6. Optionally, enter a description for the new workflow rule in the **Description** field. For this recipe, type the text Automate the alerting of Opportunity Close Dates.
- 7. Select the When a record is created, or when a record is edited and did not previously meet the rule criteria option from the Evaluation Criteria options list.
- 8. In the **Rule Criteria** section, set the **Run this rule if the following** option to **formula** evaluates to true.
- 9. Enter the following formula (as shown in the following screenshot):

NOT(IsClosed)

Step 2: Config	gure Workflow Rule	Step 2 of 3
		Previous Save & Next Cancel
Enter the name, o	lescription, and criteria to trigger your workflow rule. In the next step, a	associate workflow actions with this workflow rule.
Edit Rule		= Required Information
Object Rule Name Description	Opportunity Alert Opportunity Close E Automate the alerting of Opportunity Close Dates	* *
Evaluation Cr	iteria	
Evalu	How do I choose?     When a record is created, or when a record is edited and div     Only when a record is created     Every time a record is created or edited	d not previously meet the rule criteria
Rule Criteria		
Run this rule	f the following formula evaluates to true 💌	
Example: C	ownerId <> LastModifiedById evaluates to true when the person who last m	odified the record is not the record owner. $\underline{More}$
Insert Field	Insert Operator 🔻	Functions
NOT(IsClose	d)	ABS A AND E BEGINS

115-

10. Click on Save & Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions** page.

11. In the **Time-Dependent Workflow Actions** section, click on the **Add Time Trigger** button as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions St	tep 3 of 3
	Done
Specify the workflow actions that will be triggered when the rule criteria are met. See an example	
Rule Criteria NOT(IsClosed)	
Evaluation Criteria When a record is created, or when a record is edited and did not previously meet the rule criter	ia
Immediate Workflow Actions	
No workflow actions have been added	
Add Workflow Action	
Time-Dependent Workflow Actions See an example	
No workflow actions have been added. Before adding a workflow action, you must have at least one time trigger d	efined.
Add Time Trigger	



12. Enter **21** in the first text field and select **Days** from the next drop-down list. Select **Before** and **Opportunity Close Date** as shown in the following screenshot:

Add Time Trigger Opportunity		Help for this Page 🥝
Workflow Time Tr	igger Edit	
Workflow Rule	Alert Opportunity Close Date 21 Days  Before  Opportunity: Close Date	
	Save	

13. Click on Save.





Here, we are presented with the **Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions** page.

14. In the **Time-Dependent Workflow Actions** section, set the **Add Workflow Action** option to **New Email Alert** as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions	Step 3 of 3
	Done
Specify the workflow actions that will be triggered when the rule criteria are met. See an example	
Rule Criteria         NOT(IsClosed)           Evaluation Criteria         When a record is created, or when a record is edited and did not previously meet the	rule criteria
Immediate Workflow Actions	
No workflow actions have been added.	
Time-Dependent Workflow Actions See an example	
Image: Close Date     Edit   Delete	
No workflow actions have been added to this time trigger.         Add Workflow Action         New Task         New Email Alert         New Field Update         New Outbound Message         Select Existing Action	



- 15. Enter the description for the e-mail alert in the **Description** field. For this recipe, type the text Alert Opportunity Close Date.
- 16. Accept the default text Alert\_Opportunity\_Close\_Date that is automatically set in the Unique Name field.
- 17. Now choose the template that we created in the *Getting ready* section of this recipe. We called this template **Alert Opportunity Close Date**.
- 18. Set the Recipient Type to Owner.



19. Set the **Selected Recipients** to **Opportunity Owner** as shown in the following screenshot:

onanging an onic	an alor, any moundation mapping to an rate, approvale, or official pro-	00000 000000000000000000000000000000000
Email Alert	t Edit Save Save & New Cancel	
Edit Email	il Alert	= Required Information
Description	Alert Opportunity Close Date	
Unique Name	Alert_Opportunity_Close i	
Object	Opportunity	
Email Template	Alert Opportunity Close D	
Protected Component		
Recipient Type	Search: Owner for.	Find
Recipients	Available Recipients Selected Recipients	
	None	
	None	
	Add Remove	
You can enter	r up to five (5) email addresses to be notified.	
Additional Fmails		*
		*
From Email Address	Current User's email address 💌	
	Make this address the default From email address for this object's ema	il alerts.
	Save Save & New Cancel	

-118-

#### – Chapter 4

### 20. Click on Save.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions** page (as shown in the following screenshot).

Step 3: Specify	Workflow Actions		Step 3 of 3
			Done
Specify the workflow	v actions that will be trig	gered when the rule criteria are met. <u>See an examp</u>	le
Rule Criteria	NOT(IsClosed)		
Evaluation Criteria	When a record is create criteria	ed, or when a record is edited and did not previously mee	et the rule
Immediate Wor	kflow Actions		
No workflow actions Add Workflow Action	have been added.		
Time-Depender	nt Workflow Actions	See an example	
21 Days Before	e Opportunity: Close Da Type	te <u>Edit   Delete</u>	
Edit   Remove	Email Alert	Alert Opportunity Close Date	
Add Workflow Act	ion 🔻		
Add Time Trigger			

119—

Automating Salesforce CRM \_\_\_\_\_

21. Click on Done.

Workflow Rule	Detail Edit Delete	Clone Activate	
Rule Name	Alert Opportunity Close Date	Object	Opportunity
Active		Evaluation Criteria	When a record is created, or when record is edited and did not previously meet the rule criteria
Description	Automate the alerting of Opportur	nity Close Dates	
Rule Criteria	NOT(IsClosed)		
Created By	System Administrator, 29/09/201. 14:02	2 Modified By	System Administrator, 29/09/2012 14:02
Workflow Actio	ns Edit		
Immediate Wo	orkflow Actions		
No workflow action	ns have been added.		

- 22. Finally, click on Activate.
- 23. Set **Default Workflow User** if the message that is shown in the following screenshot is shown:

Workflow Rule	Detail Edit Delete	Clone Activate	
Rule Name	Alert Opportunity Close Date	Object	Opportunity
Active		Evaluation Criteria	When a record is created, or when a record is edited and did not previously meet the rule criteria
Description	Automate the alerting of Opportuni	ity Close Dates	
Rule Criteria	NOT(IsClosed)		
Created By	System Administrator, 29/09/2012 14:02	Modified By	System Administrator, 29/09/2012 14:02
	Message from webpage		
Workflow Acti	The Default Workflow Us rule.	er must be set before acti	vating this workflow
Immediate V		0	K Cancel

24. Click on **OK**.



We are now redirected to the **Workflow & Approvals Settings** page where we can set **Default Workflow User** (as shown in the following screenshot).

	د Approvals Settings	Help for this Page
	Save	
Specify a default w privileges.	workflow user. Salesforce.com recommends choosing a user with sy	stem administrator
Default Workflow User	System Administrator	
Enabling email app the first line and ac	proval response lets users reply to email approval requests by typin dding comments in the second line.	g APPROVE or REJECT in
Enable Email		
Approval Response		
Approval Response By enabling th responses, up on behalf of yo	he email approval response feature, you agree to allow salesforce.c date approval requests for all active users in your organization, and our organization's users.	om to process email approval d update the approval object
Approval Response By enabling th responses, up on behalf of yo	ne email approval response feature, you agree to allow salesforce.c odate approval requests for all active users in your organization, and our organization's users.	om to process email approval d update the approval object

#### 25. Set Default Workflow User.

26. Click on Save.

Rule Name	Alert Opportunity Close Date	Object	Opportunity
Active	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	Evaluation Criteria	When a record is created, or when record is edited and did not previously meet the rule criteria
Description	Automate the alerting of Opp	ortunity Close Dates	
Rule Criteria	NOT(IsClosed)		
Created By	System Administrator, 29/09/ 14:02	2012 Modified By	System Administrator, 29/09/2012 18:00
Workflow Actio	ons Edit		
Workflow Actio	orkflow Actions ns have been added.		
Workflow Actio Immediate W No workflow actio Time-Depend	ons Edit crkflow Actions Ins have been added. ent Workflow Actions	See an example	
Workflow Action	ent Workflow Actions ent Workflow Actions ore Opportunity: Close Date	See an example	
Workflow Action Immediate W No workflow action Time-Depend 21 Days Befor Type	ent Workflow Actions ent Workflow Actions ore Opportunity: Close Date Description	<u>See an example</u>	





We are now finally redirected to the **Workflow Rule Detail** page with the **Active** checkbox checked as shown in the preceding screenshot.

### How it works...

An automatic e-mail alert is now triggered using a Salesforce workflow rule that sends the e-mail alert when nearing the opportunity close date. In this example recipe, we see that an e-mail alert is received 21 days before the opportunity close date, as shown in the following screenshot:

TS	CALENDAR Alert Opportunity Clo
	🛅 Delete 🔸 🐟 🔿 🖬 Move 🗸 🦁 Spam 🎡 Actions 🗸 🚖 📮
	✓ Alert Opportunity Close Date Tue, 26 Feb 2013 at 17:26 ● ★
	From System Administrator +
	To admin@widgetsxyz.com
+	26/02/2013 Dear System, The close date for the opportunity, Acme Test for the account Acme is due within 21 days.
~ ~	Salesforce System Administrator

If the opportunity close date is less than 21 days in the future, the e-mail alert will be sent immediately.

### Setting a default opportunity name using a field update workflow

Often organizations use a naming convention when entering data in the CRM system.

Sales managers often instruct their sales team to enter the name of opportunities as a combination of the account name and the deal name, to help manage the processing and improve the readability of the opportunity record. For example, Acme Opportunity X.

This business requirement, to have an agreed format for the naming of opportunities, is a good example of where automation can be utilized in Salesforce CRM.



In order to automatically set the default naming of opportunities in Salesforce, a workflow rule, and a field update can be created by using this recipe.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to set a default opportunity name using a field update workflow:

- 1. Navigate to the workflow setup page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Create | Workflow & Approvals.
- 2. Click on Continue (if shown).

The **Continue** button is found on the **Understanding Workflow** page (if this is shown) as in the following screenshot:

any of the tasks you normally assign, the emails you regularly send, and other record updates are part of your organization's standard processes. Affect is Workflow? Article Workflow? Article Workflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes: :: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. :: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. :: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. :: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role or or ore recipients you specify. :: Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record. :: Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener. or example, workflow can: :: Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal. :: Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires. :: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report. ach workflow rule consists of. :: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run. :: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. Don't show me this page again Southure	nderstanding Workflow Help for this Pag
Inhat is Workflow? Vorkflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes: I Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. I: Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify. I: Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record. I: Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener. or example, workflow can: I: Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated. I: Scharge the Owner field on a neotract three days before it expires. I: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report. ach workflow rule consists of: I: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run. I: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. I: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. I: There-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. I: There-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. Don't show me this page again	Many of the tasks you normally assign, the emails you regularly send, and other record updates are part of your organization's standard processes. nstead of doing this work manually, you can configure workflow to do it automatically.
iorkflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes:         :: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner.         :: Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.         :: Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.         :: Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.         or example, workflow can:         :: Assign follow-up tasks to a support per one week after a case is updated.         :: Sand sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.         :: Charge the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.         :: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.         ach workflow rule consists of:         :: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.         :: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.         :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email meninder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.         :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high	What is Workflow?
<ul> <li>I Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner.</li> <li>I Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.</li> <li>I Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.</li> <li>I Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.</li> <li>or example, workflow can:</li> <li>Assign follow-up tasks to a support per one week after a case is updated.</li> <li>Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.</li> <li>Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.</li> <li>Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.</li> <li>ach workflow rule consists of:</li> <li>Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.</li> <li>Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.</li> <li>Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.</li> <li>Don't show me this page again</li> </ul>	Workflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes:
<ul> <li>Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.</li> <li>Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.</li> <li>Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.</li> <li>or example, workflow can:</li> <li>Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.</li> <li>Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.</li> <li>Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.</li> <li>Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.</li> <li>ach workflow rule consists of:</li> <li>Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.</li> <li>Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.</li> <li>Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.</li> <li>Don't show me this page again</li> </ul>	:: Tasks-Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner.
<ul> <li>Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.</li> <li>Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.</li> <li>or example, workflow can:</li> <li>Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.</li> <li>Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.</li> <li>Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.</li> <li>Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.</li> <li>ach workflow rule consists of:</li> <li>Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.</li> <li>Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.</li> <li>Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.</li> <li>Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.</li> <li>Don't show me this page again</li> </ul>	:: Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.
E Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.     or example, workflow can:         E Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.         Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.         E Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.         Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.         Ack workflow rule consists of:         Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.         Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.         Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.         Don't show me this page again <u>continue</u>	:: Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.
or example, workflow can: :: Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated. :: Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal. :: Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires. :: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report. ach workflow rule consists of. :: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run. :: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. Dont show me this page again Continue	:: Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.
Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.     Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.     Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.     Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.     Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.     Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.     Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.     Immediate such an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.     Don't show me this page again	For example, workflow can:
Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.     Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.     Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.     Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.     Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.     Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.     Time-demendent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.     Don't show me this page again     Continue	: Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.
<ul> <li>Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.</li> <li>Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.</li> <li>ach workflow rule consists of.</li> <li>Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.</li> <li>Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.</li> <li>Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.</li> <li>Don't show me this page again</li> </ul>	** Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.
If Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report. Ach workflow rule consists of: If Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run. If Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. If Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. If Don't show me this page again Intimue Integrations and In	: Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.
ach workflow rule consists of: :: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run. :: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. Don't show me this page again <u>continue</u>	:: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense report.
Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.     Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.     Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.     Don't show me this page again     Continue	Each workflow rule consists of:
Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. Immedeendent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. Tont show me this page again Continue	: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.
the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created. :: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date. Don't show me this page again continue	:: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email that notifies
Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.     Don't show me this page again     Continue	the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.
can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.  Don't show me this page again  continue	:: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, salesforce.com
2 Don't show me this page again	can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date.
Continue	☑ Don't show me this page again
	Continue

3. Click on New Rule.





4. Select **Opportunity** and click on **Next** as shown in the following screenshot:





Here, we are presented with the **Step 2: Configure Workflow Rule** page.

- 5. Enter the name of the new workflow rule in the **Rule Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Set Opportunity Name.
- 6. Optionally, enter a description for the new workflow rule in the **Description** field. For this recipe, type the text Automate the setting of Opportunity names according to the agreed naming convention.
- 7. Select the **Every time a record is created or edited** option from the **Evaluation Criteria** options list.
- 8. In the **Rule Criteria** section, set the **Run this rule if the following** option to **formula** evaluates to true.
- 9. Enter the following formula in the formula editor:

NOT( CONTAINS( Name, Account.Name ) )

-124

This is shown in the following screenshot:

Step 2: Configure Wo	rkflow Rule	Step 2 of 3
	Previous	Save & Next Cancel
Enter the name, description	, and criteria to trigger your workflow rule. In the next step,	associate workflow act
Edit Rule		
Object	Opportunity	
Rule Name	Set Opportunity Name	
Description	Automate the setting of Opportunity names according to the a convention	greed naming
Evaluation Criteria		
	<ul> <li>When a record is created, or when a record is edited</li> <li>Only when a record is created</li> <li>Every time a record is created or edited</li> <li>You cannot add time-dependent workflow actions</li> </ul>	d and did not previously n
Rule Criteria		
Run this rule if the follov	formula evaluates to true 💌	
Example: OwnerId <>	LastModifiedById evaluates to true when the person who last	modified the record is not
Insert Field Inse	rt Operator 🔻	Functions
NOT( CONTAINS( Nan	ie, Account.Name ) )	All Function ABS AND BEGINS

10. Click on Save & Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions** page.

125

11. In the Immediate Workflow Actions section, set the Add Workflow Action option to New Field Update as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions						
Specify the workflow actio	ns that will be triggered when the rule criteria are met. <u>S</u>					
Rule Crite Evaluation Crite	eria NOT( CONTAINS( Name, Account.Name ) ) eria Every time a record is created or edited					
Immediate Workflow Actions						
Add Workflow Action	been added.					
New Task New Email Alert	kflow Actions See an example					
New Field Update New Outbound Message Select Existing Action	ependent workflow actions because your evaluation criteria					



- 12. Enter the name for the new field update in the Name field. For this recipe, type the text Opp Name Update.
- 13. Accept the default value in the Unique Name field which is automatically set as Opp\_ Name\_Update.
- 14. Optionally, enter a description for the new field update in the **Description** field. In this recipe, type the text Automate the setting of Opportunity names according to the agreed naming convention.
- 15. Set the Field to Update option to Opportunity Name.



Here, we are presented with the **Specify New Field Value** section.

- 16. Select the option Use a formula to set the new value.
- 17. In the formula editor box, enter the following formula:

Account.Name & " " & Name



This is shown in the following screenshot:

riela opulite Luit	Jave a new Cancer
Identification	
Name	Opp Name Update
Unique Name	Opp_Name_Update
Description	Automate the setting of Opportunity names according to the agreed naming convention
Object	Opportunity
Field to Update	Opportunity Vame
Field Data Type	Text
Re-evaluate Workflow Rules after Field Change	
Specify New Field V	alue
	Text Options
	Ose a formula to set the new value <u>Hide Formula Editor</u>
	Insert Field Insert Operator V
	Formula Value (Text) =

18. Click on Save.



Step 3: Specify	y Workflow Actio	ons	Step 3 of 3			
			Done			
Specify the workflo	w actions that will be	triggered when the rule criteria are met. See an exam	ple			
Rule Criteria	Rule Criteria NOT( CONTAINS( Name, Account.Name ) )					
Evaluation Criteria	Evaluation Criteria Every time a record is created or edited					
Immediate Wo	rkflow Actions					
Action	Туре	Description				
Edit   Remove	Field Update	Opp Name Update				
Add Workflow Actio	Add Workflow Action 💌					
Time-Dependent Workflow Actions See an example						
You cannot add time-dependent workflow actions because your evaluation criteria is "Every time a record is created or edited". <u>Change Evaluation Criteria</u>						



19. Click on Done.

et Opportu Back to List: Field	Inity Name			Help for this P
Workflow Rule	Detail	Edit Delete	Clone Activate	
Rule Name	Set Opportunity N	lame	Object	Opportunity
Active			Evaluation Criteria	Every time a record is created edited
Description	Automate the set	ting of Opportunity	names according to the	e agreed naming convention
Rule Criteria	NOT( CONTAINS	6(Name, Account.N	Name))	
Created By	System Administr 16:25	rator, 23/09/2012	Modified By	System Administrator, 23/09/ 16:25
Workflow Actio	ons	Edit		

20. Finally, click on Activate.

### How it works...

Every time an opportunity is created or edited in Salesforce CRM, the workflow rule checks if the account name appears within the text of the opportunity name.

If there is no account name text within the opportunity name, the workflow field update is immediately triggered. Here, the name of the opportunity is prefixed with the name of the account as shown in these example opportunities for the Acme account:

-128

#### Chapter 4

ccounts Con	tacts Op	portunities	Cases	Reports	Dashboards	CRM Books	+	
Acme								
	Feed 🕀 Fo	ollow						
« Back to L	list: Users	Contacts	21   <u>Oppo</u>	ortunities [5+]	<u>Cases [2]</u>   <u>O</u>	en Activities [1]	Activity Histor	<u>v [3]</u>   <u>Notes &amp; Attac</u>
Oppor	tunities			New	Opportunity Ma	ass Delete Oppor	tunities	
Action	Opport	unity Name			Stage			
Edit	Del Acme A	Large Deal			Proposal/F	rice Quote		
📄   Edit   [	Del Acme M	ly Large Deal			Proposal/F	rice Quote		
📄   Edit   🕻	Del Acme S	tage Test			Prospectin	g		
📄   Edit   [	Del Acme V	Vidget Beyond			Prospectin	g		
📄   Edit   [	Del Acme L	arge Deal			Proposal/F	rice Quote		
Show 1 mo	re »   <u>Go to li</u>	<u>st (6) »</u>						
	SIC	C Code	_					Credit Score

# Generating a default opportunity close date using a field update workflow

As best practice in CRM systems, when creating opportunities there should always be a close date by which to monitor the progress of the sale.

In Salesforce, the close date is a required field but unless there is some company-specific procedure, the date could be set to anything upon creation.

Often organizations instruct their sales team to set the close date to a nominal value with respect to the creation date of the opportunity, say the date the record was created plus 21 days.

In order to set this default close date for opportunities in Salesforce, a workflow rule, a field update, and a custom new opportunity button that calls a Visualforce page, can be created using this recipe.

129—

How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to generate a default opportunity close date using a field update workflow:

- 1. Navigate to the workflow setup page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Create | Workflow & Approvals.
- 2. Click on **Continue** (if shown).

The **Continue** button is found on the **Understanding Workflow** page (if this is shown) as in the following screenshot:

Aany of the tasks you normally assign, the emails you regularly send, and other record updates are part of your organization's standard nstead of doing this work manually, you can configure workflow to do it automatically. What is Workflow? Workflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes: :: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. :: Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify. :: Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record. :: Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener. 'or example, workflow can:	Help for this Page
What is Workflow? Vorkflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes: : Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. : Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify. : Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record. : Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener. 'or example, workflow can:	d processes.
Workflow automates the following types of actions based on your organization's processes: Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner. Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify. Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record. Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener. or example, workflow can:	
Tasks—Assign a new task to a user, role, or record owner.     Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.     Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.     Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.     or example, workflow can:	
Email Alerts—Send an email to one or more recipients you specify.     Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.     Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.     or example, workflow can:	
Field Updates—Update the value of a field on a record.     Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener.     or example, workflow can:	
Outbound Messages—Send a secure, configurable API message (in XML format) to a designated listener. For example, workflow can:	
For example, workflow can:	
: Assign follow-up tasks to a support rep one week after a case is updated.	
:: Send sales management an email alert when a sales rep qualifies a large deal.	
: Change the Owner field on a contract three days before it expires.	
: Trigger an outbound API message to an external HR system to initiate the reimbursement process for an approved expense repo	ort.
Each workflow rule consists of:	
:: Criteria that cause the workflow rule to run.	
: Immediate actions that execute when a record matches the criteria. For example, salesforce.com can automatically send an ema	ail that notifies
the account team when a new high-value opportunity is created.	
: Time-dependent actions that queue when a record matches the criteria, and execute according to time triggers. For example, sale	lesforce.com
can automatically send an email reminder to the account team if a high-value opportunity is still open ten days before the close date	9.
☑ Don't show me this page again	
Continue	

3. Click on New Rule.



4. Select **Opportunity** and click on **Next** as shown in the following screenshot:

New Workflow Rule	Help for this Page 🥑
Step 1: Select object	Step 1 of 3
	Next Cancel
Select the object to which this workflow rule applies.	
Select object Opportunity	
	Next Cancel



- 5. Enter the name of the new workflow rule in the **Rule Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Set Opportunity Close Date.
- 6. Optionally, enter a description for the new workflow rule in the **Description** field.
- 7. Select the **Only when a record is created** option from the **Evaluation Criteria** options list.
- 8. In the **Rule Criteria** section, set the **Run this rule if the following** option to **formula** evaluates to true.
- 9. Enter the following formula in the formula editor:

NOT(IsClosed)


This is shown in the following screenshot:

Edit Rule Set	t Opportunity Close Date	Help for this Page 🥜
Enter the name, descriptio	on, and criteria to trigger your workflow rule. In the next step, associate Save Cancel	e workflow actions with this workflow rule.
Edit Rule		= Required Information
Object Rule Name Description	Opportunity Set Opportunity Close Dat Automate the setting of Opportunity close date according to the ag convention	reed A
Evaluation Criteria		
Evaluate the rule when a record is:	<ul> <li>created</li> <li>created, and every time it's edited</li> <li>created, and any time it's edited to subsequently meet criteria</li> <li>How do I choose?</li> </ul>	1
Rule Criteria		
Run this rule if the follo <b>Example:</b> OwnerId <> owner. <u>More Examples</u>	wing formula evaluates to true  . LastModifiedById evaluates to true when the person who last modif	ied the record is not the record
Insert Field	Insert Operator 🔻	Functions
NOT(IsClosed)		All Function Categories  All Function Categories  ABS AND BEGINS BLANKVALUE BR CASE Insert Selected Function
Check Syntax		
	Save Cancel	

10. Click on Save & Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions** page.

11. In the Immediate Workflow Actions section, set the Add Workflow Action option to New Field Update.



Here, we are presented with the **New Field Update** page.



- 12. Enter the name for the new field update in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Set Opportunity Close Date.
- 13. Accept the default value in the **Unique Name** field which is automatically set as **Set\_Opportunity\_Close\_Date**.
- 14. Optionally, enter a description for the new field update in the **Description** field.
- 15. Set the Field to Update to Opportunity CloseDate.



Here, we are presented with the **Specify New Field Value** section (as shown in the upcoming screenshot).

- 16. Select the option Use a formula to set the new value.
- 17. In the formula editor, enter the following formula (as shown in the following screenshot):

NOW() + 21

Edit Field Update		Help for this Page 🕜
Set Opportun	ity Close Date	
Define the field update the field to update, and only for the type that y	, including the object associated with the workflow rule, approval d the value to apply. Note that the field to update may be on a rela ou select.	process, or entitlement process, ated object. Fields are shown
Field Update Edi	Save Save & New Cancel	
Identification		= Required Information
Name	Set Opportunity Close Dat	
Unique Name	Set_Opportunity_Close_D	
Description		~
Object	Opportunity	
Field to Update	Opportunity: Close Date	
Field Data Type	Date	
Re-evaluate Workflow Rules after Field Change		
Specify New Field	I Value	
	Date Options	
	Ose a formula to set the new value Show Formula Editor	
	NOW() + 21	
	Use <u>formula syntax</u> : e.g., Text in double quotes: "hello", Number: 25, Pe expression: Today() + 7	ercent as decimal: 0.10, Date
	Save Save & New Cancel	



Automating Salesforce CRM -

18. Click on Save.



Here, we are reshown the **Step 3: Specify Workflow Actions** page.

19. Click on Done.



We are now redirected to the new workflow rule where we can activate the rule.

20. Finally, click on Activate.

#### How it works...

Every time an opportunity is created in Salesforce CRM, the workflow rule checks if the opportunity is not set as **Closed**.

If it is not set as **Closed**, the workflow field update is immediately triggered. Here the **Close Date** field of the opportunity is set to be now (current date and time) plus 21 days as shown in the following screenshot.

The opportunity is created and manually set with today's current date (which in this example is **28/02/2013**) as shown in the following screenshot:

New Opp	ortunity			Help for this Page 🕜
Opportunity Edit	Save	Save & New	Cancel	
Opportunity Infor	mation			= Required Information
Opportunity Name	Widgets 555		Close Date	28/02/2013 [ <u>28/02/2013</u> ]
Opportunity Owner	System Administrator		Forecast Category	Pipeline ▼
Private			Stage	Perception Analysis 🔻
Account Name	Acme		Reason Lost	None
Туре	None	•	Amount	
Lead Source	None 🔻		Next Step	

-134

Upon saving the opportunity, the workflow field update is triggered and the **Close Date** field is updated to be the current date and time plus 21 days (which in this example is **21/03/2013**) as shown in the following screenshot:

Acme Wi	dgets 555	Customize Page   Edit L	ayout   Printable View   Help for this Page 🥢
🔺 Show Feed 🕀 F	ollow		
« Back to List: Workfl	ow Rules		
Approval History [0] Opportunity Deta	I   Products [0]   Open Activities [0]   Partners [0]   Com I Edit Delete	Activity History [0]   Notes & petitors [0]   Stage History [2] Clone	& Attachments [0]   Contact Roles [0]
Opportunity Name	Acme Widgets 555	Close Date	21/03/2013
Opportunity Owner	System Administrator [Change]	Opportunity ID (18 Chars)	006E000000AfAmpIAF
Private		Forecast Category	Pipeline
Account Name	<u>Acme</u>	Stage	Perception Analysis
Туре		Stage 😮	StageName [Change Status]
Lead Source		Reason Lost	

135—

# 5 Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- Stopping non-system administrators from changing account names with a validation rule
- > Enforcing the use of two-letter account country codes using a validation rule
- ► Validating if US zip codes are well formed using a validation rule with REGEX
- ► Validating if UK postcodes are well formed using a validation rule with REGEX
- Creating a mandatory Reason Lost field for lost opportunities using a validation rule

## Introduction

The CRM industry experts typically list poor data quality as one of the top reasons for CRM applications to fail to deliver. Poor data often leads to misleading, incomplete, and confusing information and can lead to user dissatisfaction and lack of user adoption. It is important that users understand that the data quality in a Salesforce CRM is not just the responsibility of their system administrator, but that they must also contribute to the accurate recording of information and understand how data quality directly affects their work.

It is also true that people make mistakes when entering data. This is where the power of the Salesforce CRM application and the Force.com platform becomes truly apparent. We can limit this source of error by building automatic validation and automatic workflow into the application to prevent users from making errors and cleaning up data where necessary.

Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

#### Stopping non-system administrators from changing account names with a validation rule

Often there is a need to restrict the updating of data from users within Salesforce CRM. A typical example is where account records are created according to an agreed process or naming convention, which requires verification by other users or systems within the organization.

In this recipe, we will construct a validation rule that prevents the changing of account name by users who are not logged in as system administrators.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a validation rule:

- 1. Navigate to the account customization setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Validation Rules**.
- 2. Click on New.



Here, we are presented with the **Account Validation Rule Edit** page.

- 3. Type Admins Only to Update Name in the **Field Label** textbox (upon clicking out of the textbox, the name changes to **Admins\_Only\_to\_Update\_Name**).
- 4. Leave the Active checkbox ticked.
- 5. Optionally, set the **Description** field to This validation rule is for stopping non-System Administrators from changing Account Names.



Navigate to the **Error Condition Formula** section (as shown in the upcoming screenshot).

6. Paste the following code:

```
AND(
   ISCHANGED( Name ),
   $Profile.Name <> "System Administrator"
)
```

138

- 7. In the **Error Message** section, enter the text Only System Administrators are allowed to change the Account Name.
- 8. In the Error Location option, select Field.



Here, we are presented with the **Field** selection pick list (as shown in the following screenshot).

9. Select the field Account Name (as shown):

Rule Name Admins Only to Update Name		
ctive V Hescription This validation rule is for stopping non-System Administrators from changin Account Names.	Quick Tips   Getting Started  Operators & Fund	<u>ction:</u>
Error Condition Formula	Required Inform	natior
xample:       Discount_Percent_c>0.30       More Examples         visplay an error if Discount is more than 30%         'this formula expression is true, display the text defined in the Error Message area         Insert Field       Insert Operator ▼	Functions All Function Categories GETSESSIONID IF INCLUDES ISBLANK ISBLANK	- • (E)
ISCHANGEU(Name), SProfile.Name <> "System Administrator"	ISCHANGED ISNEW Insert Selected Function ABS(number) Returns the absolute value of a number, a number without its s	+ a sign
Check Syntax No errors found		
Error Message		
ixample: Discount percent cannot exceed 30%		
rror Message Only System Administrators are allowed to change the Account Name	*	
his error message can either appear at the top of the page or below a specific field on t	the page	
rror Location O Top of Page Field Account Name	i	

10. Finally, click on Save.



Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

#### How it works...

Having logged in as a user that does not have a system administrator profile and changing the name of an account record, the validation rule is activated and the record is prevented from being saved. Upon the attempt to save, an error message is displayed below the **Account Name** field stating **Error: Only System Administrators are allowed to change the Account Name**.

You can see what this looks like in the following screenshot:

Account Edit	Save Save & New Cancel		
	Error: Invalio Review all error messages bel	l Data. ow to correct your da	ta.
Account Informatio	n		
Account Owner	System Administrator	Active	Yes
Account Name	Acme Change Error: Only System Administrators are allowed to change the Account Name	Upsell Opportunity	N

# Enforcing the use of two-letter account country codes using a validation rule

Accurate information and reports are vital in an effective Salesforce CRM system and without it, users and sales management cannot make informed decisions. One way to achieve accurate information for reporting is by ensuring that data is stored in a consistent manner.

In this recipe, we will create a validation rule to ensure that account country codes are entered using two letters, according to an international standard (ISO 3166), from the International Organization for Standardization.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following step to create a validation rule:

- 1. Navigate to the account customization setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Validation Rules**.
- 2. Click on New.



Here, we are presented with the **Account Validation Rule Edit** page.

3. Type Valid Billing Country in the **Field Label** textbox (upon clicking out of the textbox, the name changes to **Valid\_Billing\_Country**).

- 4. Leave the Active checkbox ticked.
- Optionally, set the Description field to This validation rule is for ensuring the entry of valid billing country codes.



6. Paste the following code:

```
OR (
ISBLANK (BillingCountry),
LEN(BillingCountry) < 2,
NOT (
CONTAINS (
"AF:AX:AL:DZ:AS:AD:AO:AI:AO:AG:AR:AM:" &
"AW:AU:AZ:BS:BH:BD:BB:BY:BE:BZ:BJ:BM:BT:BO:" &
"BA:BW:BV:BR:IO:BN:BG:BF:BI:KH:CM:CA:CV:KY:" &
"CF:TD:CL:CN:CX:CC:CO:KM:CG:CD:CK:CR:CI:HR:" &
"CU:CY:CZ:DK:DJ:DM:DO:EC:EG:SV:GO:ER:EE:ET:FK:" &
"FO:FJ:FI:FR:GF:PF:TF:GA:GM:GE:DE:GH:GI:GR:GL:" &
"GD:GP:GU:GT:GG:GN:GW:GY:HT:HM:VA:HN:HK:HU:" &
"IS:IN:ID:IR:IQ:IE:IM:IL:IT:JM:JP:JE:JO:KZ:KE:KI:" &
"KP:KR:KW:KG:LA:LV:LB:LS:LR:LY:LI:LT:LU:MO:MK:" &
"MG:MW:MY:MV:ML:MT:MH:MQ:MR:MU:YT:MX:FM:MD:MC:" &
"MC:MN:ME:MS:MA:MZ:MM:MA:NR:NP:NL:AN:NC:NZ:NI:" &
"NE:NG:NU:NF:MP:NO:OM:PK:PW:PS:PA:PG:PY:PE:PH:" &
"PN:PL:PT:PR:QA:RE:RO:RU:RW:SH:KN:LC:PM:VC:WS:" &
"SM:ST:SA:SN:RS:SC:SL:SG:SK:SI:SB:SO:ZA:GS:ES:" &
"LK:SD:SR:SJ:SZ:SE:CH:SY:TW:TJ:TZ:TH:TL:TG:TK:" &
"TO:TT:TN:TR:TM:TC:TV:UG:UA:AE:GB:US:UM:UY:UZ:" &
"VU:VE:VN:VG:VI:WF:EH:YE:ZM:ZW",
BillingCountry)))
```

7. In the Error Message section, enter the following text:

```
Please enter a valid ISO 3166 two alpha letter country code. For
example: US = United States; GB = United Kingdom; IE = Ireland; AU
= Australia etc.
http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/country_
names and code elements.htm
```

8. In the Error Location option, select Field.





Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

9. Select the field **Billing Country** (as shown):

Validation Rule Edit Save Save & New Cancel	
Rule Name     Valid_Billing_Country       Active     Image: Country country country of the country of the country of the country country codes       Description     This validation rule is for ensuring the entry of valid billing country codes	Quick Tips
Error Condition Formula	Required Information
Example:       Discount_Percent_c>0.30       More Examples         Display an error if Discount is more than 30%         If this formula expression is true, display the text defined in the Error Message area         Insert Field       Insert Operator         "KP:KR:KW:KG:LA:LV:LB:LS:LR:LY:LI:LT:LU:MO:MK." &         "MG:MW:MY:MV:ML:MT:MH:MQ:MR:MU:YT:MX:FM:MD:MC." &         "MC:MN:ME:MS:MA:MZ:MM:MA:NR:NP:NL:AN:NC:IZ:NI." &         "MC:MN:ME:S:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:SU:S	Functions  All Function Categories  All Function Categories  AND BEGINS BEGINS BLANKVALUE BR CASE Insert Selected Function ABS(number) Returns the absolute value of a number, a number without its sign Help on this function
Error Message	
Example:       Discount percent cannot exceed 30%         This message will appear when Error Condition formula is true         Error Message       Please enter a valid ISO 3166 two alpha letter country code. For example:         United States; GB = United Kingdom; IE = Ireland; AU = Australia etc http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/country_names_         This error message can either appear at the top of the page or below a specific field on the Error Location         Top of Page       Field         Billing Country	ple: US A c. E and_cod V the page
Save Save & New Cancel	

10. Finally, click on Save.

#### How it works...

You can see how the entering of an invalid country code is validated and how the message appears within the edit page as in the following screenshot:



-142

# Validating if US zip codes are well formed using a validation rule with REGEX

Accurate information and reports are vital in an effective Salesforce CRM system and without it, users and sales management cannot make informed decisions. One way to achieve accurate information for reporting is by ensuring that data is stored in a consistent manner.

In this recipe, we will create a validation rule to ensure that US zip codes conform to the correct format.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following step to create a validation rule:

- 1. Navigate to the account customization setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Validation Rules**.
- 2. Click on New.



Here, we are presented with the **Account Validation Rule Edit** page.

- 3. Type Valid US Zip Code in the **Field Label** textbox (upon clicking out of the textbox, the name changes to **Valid\_US\_Zip\_Code**).
- 4. Leave the **Active** checkbox checked.
- 5. Optionally, set the **Description** field to This validation rule is for ensuring the entry of valid US Zip codes.



6. Paste the following code:

```
AND(
   NOT( REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "\\d{5}(-\\d{4})?" ) ),
   OR(
      UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "US",
      UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "USA",
      UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "U.S.A.",
      UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "U.S.",
      UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "UNITED STATES"
    )
)
```



Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM \_\_\_\_

- 7. In the **Error Message** section, enter the text Please enter a valid US Zip code of the format: five digits as NNNNN or Zip + 4 as in NNNNN-NNNN.
- 8. In the Error Location option, select Field.



9. Select the field **Billing Zip/PostalCode** (as shown):

Validation Rule Edit Save Save & New Cancel	
Rule Name       Valid_US_Zip_Code         Active       Image: Comparison of the state	*
Error Condition Formula	
Example:       Discount_Percent_c>0.30       More Examples         Display an error if Discount is more than 30%         If this formula expression is true, display the text defined in the Error Message are         Insert Field       Insert Operator •         AND( NOT( REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "\\d{5}(-\\d{4})?" ) ),	Func 3a A ABS ANI BEC BLA BR
OR( UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "US", UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "USA", UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "U.S.", UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "U.S.", UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "UNITED STATES" ) Check Syntax No errors found	CAS Inse ABS Retu numi
Error Message	
Example: Discount percent cannot exceed 30%	
Error Message Please enter a valid US Zip code of the format: five digits as NNt as in NNNN-NNNN	NNN or Zip + 4
This error message can either appear at the top of the page or below a specific fiele Error Location Or Page O Field Billing Zip/Postal Code	eld on the page
Save Save & New Cancel	

10. Finally, click on Save.



#### How it works...

You can see how the entering of an invalid US zip code is validated and how the message appears within the edit page in the following screenshot:

Billing Address	123a High Street Acme Town, Acme State AC90210 US Error: Please enter a valid US Zip code of the format: five digits as NNNNN or Zip ± 4 as in NNNNN-NNNN
	Error: Please enter a valid US Zip code of the format: five digits as NNNNN or Zip + 4 as in NNNNN-NNNN

# Validating if UK postcodes are well formed using a validation rule with REGEX

Accurate information and reports are vital in an effective Salesforce CRM system and without it, users and sales management cannot make informed decisions. One way to achieve accurate information for reporting is by ensuring that data is stored in a consistent manner.

In this recipe, we will create a validation rule to ensure that UK postcodes conform to the correct format.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following step to create a validation rule:

- 1. Navigate to the Accounts customization setup page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Validation Rules.
- 2. Click on New.



Here, we are presented with the **Account Validation Rule Edit** page.

- 3. Type Valid UK Postcode in the **Field Label** textbox (upon clicking out of the text box, the name changes to **Valid\_UK\_Postcode**).
- 4. Leave the **Active** checkbox checked.
- 5. Optionally, set the **Description** field to This validation rule is for ensuring the entry of valid UK Postcodes.





Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

```
6. Paste the following code:
    AND (
      NOT (
         OR (
           REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z] \setminus d \setminus s \setminus d[a-zA-Z] \{2\}"),
           REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]\\d\\d\\s\\d[a-zA-Z]
    {2}"),
           REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]{2} \setminus d \setminus s \setminus d[a-zA-Z]
    {2}"),
           REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]{2} \setminus d \setminus d = zA-Z]
    {2}"),
           REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]{2} \setminus d[a-zA-Z] \setminus s \setminus d[a-zA-Z] 
    zA-Z]{2}"),
           REGEX( BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]\\d[a-zA-Z]\\s\\d[a-zA-Z]
    {2}")
         )
      ),
      OR (
        UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "UK",
        UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "U.K.",
        UPPER( BillingCountry ) = "UNITED KINGDOM"
      )
    )
```

- 7. In the **Error Message** section, enter the text Please enter a valid UK Post code of the typical format: XXNN NYY.
- 8. In the Error Location option, select Field.



-146

9. Select the field **Billing Zip/PostalCode** (as shown):

Validation Rule Edit Save Save & New Cancel	
Rule Name Valid_UK_Postcode	
Active	
Description This validation rule is for ensuring the entry of valid UK Postcodes	*
Error Condition Formula	
Example:       Discount_Percent_c>0.30       More Examples         Display an error if Discount is more than 30%         If this formula expression is true, display the text defined in the Error Message area         Insert Field       Insert Operator •	Functi All AND BEG
AND( NOT( OR( REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]\\d\\s\\d[a-zA-Z]{2}"), REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]\\d\\\s\\d[a-zA-Z]{2}"), REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z](2)\\d\\s\\d[a-zA-Z]{2}"), REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z](2)\\d\\s\\d[a-zA-Z]{2}"), REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z](2)\\d[a-zA-Z](2)"), REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z](2)\\d[a-zA-Z](2)"), REGEX(BillingPostalCode, "[a-zA-Z]\\s\\d[a-zA-Z](2)"), NOT( NOT())	BLAI BR CAS Inser ABS(r Return numb
Check Syntax No errors found	11010
Error Message	
Example: Discount percent cannot exceed 30%	
This message will appear when Error Condition formula is true	
Error Message Please enter a valid UK Post code of the typical format: XXNN NYY	*
This error message can either appear at the top of the page or below a specific field on the	) page
Error Location Orpo of Page  Field Billing Zip/Postal Code	<b>• i</b>
Save Save & New Cancel	

10. Finally, click on Save.

### How it works...

You can see how the entering of an invalid UK postcode is validated and how the message appears within the edit page in the following screenshot:

Billing Zip/Postal	OX11
Coue	Error: Please enter a valid UK Post code of the typical format: XXNN NYY



Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

### **Creating a mandatory Reason Lost field for** lost opportunities using a validation rule

In this recipe, we will create a conditional validation rule that requires the entry of the reason of why an opportunity has been lost.

The reason lost is a custom field (which we created as Reason Lost c) and is first created using the steps of this recipe.

#### **Getting ready**

Creating a custom Reason Lost field on the opportunity:

1. Navigate to the Opportunity Fields setup page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Opportunities | Fields.



Scroll down to the **Opportunities Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



- 3. Choose Picklist from the Data Type options.
- 4. Click on Next.



The **Step 2. Enter the details** page is presented.

- 5. Type Reason Lost in the Field Label textbox (as shown in the screenshot).
- 6. Accept the default Reason\_Lost in the Name field.
- 7. Type these example values into the pick list field:

```
No Budget
Missing Product Features
Better Price
Cost / Value
```

-148

#### – Chapter 5

		Previous Next Canc
Field Label	Reason Lost	
	Please enter the list of values for the picklist field below. Each value should be	separated by a new line
	No Budget Missing Product Features Better Price Cost / Value	
	Ψ.	
	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displaye	d alphabetically
	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displayer everywhere.	d alphabetically
Field Name	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displaye everywhere. Use first value as default value Descent Lect	d alphabetically
Field Name	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displaye everywhere. Use first value as default value Reason_Lost	d alphabetically
Field Name Description	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displaye everywhere. Use first value as default value Reason_Lost	d alphabetically
Field Name Description	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displayer everywhere. Use first value as default value Reason_Lost	d alphabetically
Field Name Description Help Text	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displaye everywhere. Use first value as default value Reason_Lost	d alphabetically
Field Name Description Help Text	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displaye everywhere. Use first value as default value Reason_Lost	d alphabetically
Field Name Description Help Text	Sort values alphabetically, not in the order entered. Values will be displayer everywhere. Use first value as default value Reason_Lost	d alphabetically

8. Click on Next.



- 9. Click on Next.
- 10. Select the profiles to which you want to grant edit or view access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 11. Click on Save.



12. Click on Save.



Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM -

To create the composite validation rule, we need to ensure that the custom field (**Reason\_Lost\_\_c**) has been completed whenever the opportunity has been set to **Closed Lost** by following these steps:

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following step to create a validation rule:

- 1. Navigate to the opportunity customization setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup** | Customize | Opportunities | Validation Rules.
- 2. Click on New.



Here, we are presented with the **Opportunity Validation Rules** edit page.

- 3. Type Opportunity Reason Lost in the Field Label textbox (upon clicking out of the text box, the name changes to **Opportunity\_Reason\_Lost**).
- 4. Leave the Active checkbox ticked.
- 5. Optionally, set the **Description** field to This validation rule is for ensuring Reason Lost is completed when Opportunity is Lost.



Navigate to the **Error Condition Formula** section (as shown in the upcoming screenshot).

6. Paste the following code:

```
AND (
  NOT(IsWon),
  IsClosed,
  ISBLANK(TEXT(Reason_Lost___c))
)
```

- 7. In the Error Message section, enter the text Please select an option for the Opportunity Reason Lost field.
- 8. In the Error Location option, select Field.



150

9. Select the field Reason Lost (as shown):



10. Finally, click on Save.

151

Improving Data Quality in Salesforce CRM

#### How it works...

You can see how the setting of the opportunity sales stage changes to **Closed Lost** and the attempted save then fires the validation rule.

Here, the user must enter the reason that the opportunity was lost in the custom field created in this recipe called **Reason Lost** as shown in the following screenshot:





# **6** Implementing Approval Processes

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- > Creating an e-mail template for use with approval assignments
- Setting up a user to be associated with an approval process
- ▶ Building an opportunity approval process for deals greater than USD 100,000

### Introduction

An approval process in Salesforce CRM is an automated mechanism that you can set up to automate and control the approval of records within your organization.

Approval processes contain a structured set of steps that are used to facilitate the review and action of records that match a specified criterion where approval is required. The approval process also allows for the specifying of which users are to approve the record at each step.

Each step of an approval process can apply to either all records within the process or specified records that have certain field values.

#### Implementing Approval Processes

The building of approval processes involves the setting of what actions are to be taken after the record is either first submitted, approved, rejected, or recalled from the approval process. The setup of an approval process also allows for the selective locking of the record during the process.

Approval processes provide you and your organization with a powerful mechanism to control internal processes that must be completed as part of an organization business process requirement. For example, setting up line manager approval for leave of absence, ensuring that financial managers agree with budgets and planned expenditure, sanctioning marketing campaigns, or authorizing that large sales deals are acceptable to proceed.

## Creating an e-mail template for use with approval assignments

When building approval processes for records in Salesforce CRM, it is necessary to specify the users that are to approve the record at each step of the approval process.

To notify these users that an approval request has been assigned to them, an e-mail is sent by the system. Here, you can specify a custom e-mail template to be used when notifying an approver.

In this recipe, we will create an e-mail template that will be used to notify users that an opportunity is at or above a certain amount and at a specified stage and that the record requires their approval to continue through the sales process.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create an e-mail template for use with approval assignments:

- Navigate to the new e-mail template creation page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Email | My Templates.
- 2. Select the folder My Personal Email Templates.

154

3. Click on the **New Template** button as shown in the following screenshot:

My Personal Email Templates	Help for this Page 🕜
Below is a list of all your email templates in the folder selected. Click the new but text, HTML, Custom, or Visualforce email template. You can use these email tem sending single emails. For mass emails, only text, HTML, and Custom templates	ton to create a new Iplates when may be used.
Folder My Personal Email Templates 💌 Create New Folder	
A   B   C   D   E   F   G   H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q   R   S   T   U   V   W   X	Y Z Other All
New Template	
Email Template Name	Last Modified Date
No records to display.	
A   B   C   D   E   F   G   H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P   Q   R   S   T   U   V   W   X	Y Z Other All



Here, we are presented with the **Step 1. Email Template: New Template** page.

4. Choose the **Text** option and click on the **Next** button.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 2. Text Email Template: New Template** page.

- 5. Choose the **Folder** option **Unfiled Public Email Templates** (as shown in the upcoming screenshot).
- 6. Select the checkbox Available For Use.
- 7. Enter the name of the e-mail template in the **Email Template Name** field. For this recipe, type the text 100k Deal Review.
- 8. Accept the default text **X100k\_Deal\_Review** that is automatically set in the **Template Unique Name** field.
- 9. Optionally, enter a description in the **Description** field.
- 10. Enter the subject for the e-mail in the **Subject** field. For this recipe, type the text **100k Deal Review**.



11. In the Email Body field, enter the following code:

```
{!Today}
```

```
The opportunity, {!Opportunity.Name} for the account {!Opportunity.Account.Name} has an amount > 100k.
```

The opportunity is pending your review and approval as it is now at stage {!Opportunity.StageName}.

Step 2. Text E	mail Template: New Template	Step 2 of 2
		Previous Save Cancel
Email Templat	e Information	= Required Information
Folder	Unfiled Public Email Templates 💌	
Available For Use		
Email Template Name	100k Deal Review	
Template Unique Name	X100k_Deal_Review i	
Encoding	General US & Western Europe (ISO-8859-1, ISO-LAT	「IN-1) ▼
Description		
Subject	100k Deal Review	
Email Body	{IToday} The opportunity, {IOpportunity.Name} for the account {I Opportunity.Account.Name} has an amount > 100k. The opportunity is pending your review and approval as it is stage {IOpportunity.StageName}.	now at
		Previous Save Cancel

12. Click on Save.

# Setting up a user to be associated with an approval process

When building approval processes for records in Salesforce CRM, it is necessary to specify the users who have to approve the record at each step of the approval process. We can also restrict the approval process for specific users by setting an appropriate value on their user record.



To notify these users that an approval request has been assigned to them, an e-mail is sent by the system. Here, you can specify that a record owner's manager is to be set as the approver for the record. To restrict the approval process for specific users, you can specify that, say, only the sales team is to submit opportunity reviews.

In this recipe, we will edit a user record to set the value of the **Manager** field to a user record to which approval notifications will be sent. We will also set the value of the **Department** field to **Sales** which is used as one of the criterion for the triggering of the approval process.

The sales user setting is entered in the standard **Department** field and the manager is set using the standard **Manager** lookup field and these are set using this recipe.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to set up a user that is to be associated with approval processes:

- 1. Navigate to the user's record page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Manage Users** | **Users**.
- 2. Edit the user's record. In this recipe, we are setting the **Department** field for the user **SVP Sales** to **Sales** as shown in the following screenshot:

User Edit SVP Sale	es		
User Edit	S	ave Save & N	ew Cancel
General I	nformation		
First Name	SVP	Role	SVP, Sales
Last Name	Sales	User License	Salesforce
Alias	ssale	Profile	Custom: Sa
Email	admin@jiveforce.com	Active	<b>V</b>
Username	svp.sales@widgetsxyz.cc	Marketing User	
Community Nickname	ssale i	Offline User	
Title		Knowledge User	
Company		Force.com Flow User	
Department	Sales	Service Cloud User	
Division		Site.com Contributor	



Implementing Approval Processes -

 Scroll down the user's edit page to the Approver Settings section and select a manager for the user. In this recipe we are setting the Manager field for the user SVP Sales to System Administrator as shown in the following screenshot:

Approver Settin	ngs
Delegated Approver	
Manager	System Administrator
Receive Approval Request Emails	Only if I am an approver

# Building an opportunity approval process for deals greater than USD 100,000

In this recipe, we will build an Opportunity approval process for deals greater than USD 100,000.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to build an opportunity approval process for deals greater than USD 100,000:

- 1. Navigate to the approval processes setup page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Create | Workflow & Approvals | Approval Processes.
- 2. In the **Manage Approval Processes For:** pick list choose, **Opportunity** as shown in the following screenshot:

- 158

#### Chapter 6

Approval Processes Help for this Page 📀
<ul> <li>Approvals are complex business processes that require information gathering and planning before implementing. It is recommended that you follow the instructions below before getting started.</li> <li><u>Read the help topic</u></li> <li><u>View the checklist</u></li> <li><u>Create an autemplates</u></li> <li>Create an approval process using either the Jump Start or Standard Wizard</li> <li>Add Approval History Related List to all page layouts</li> <li>Activate the process to deploy to your users</li> </ul>
Manage Approval Processes For: Opportunity
A listing of both active and inactive approval processes for <b>Opportunities</b> is displayed below. To create a new approval process, click Create New Approval Process then select Use Jump Start Wizard to set up your approval process in a few short steps. Or, select Use Standard Wizard to configure all approval options.
Create New Approval Process 🔻
Active Approval Processes Reorder
No approval processes available
Inactive Approval Processes
No approval processes available

Here, we are presented with a listing of both active and inactive approval processes for opportunities as shown in the previous screenshot.

- 3. Click on the Create New Approval Process button.
- 4. Choose the pick list option **Use Standard Setup Wizard** (as shown in the following screenshot):

Manage Approval Process	es For: Opportunity
A listing of both active and inactive To create a new approval process, Start Wizard to set up your approva Wizard to configure all approval opt	approval processes for <b>Opportunities</b> is displayed below. click Create New Approval Process then select Use Jump Il process in a few short steps. Or, select Use Standard ions.
Create New Approval Process 💌	
Use Jump Start Wizard	
Use Standard Setup Wizard	Peorder





Here, we are presented with the **Step 1. Enter Name and Description** page.

- 5. Enter the name of the new approval process in the Process Name field. For this recipe, type the text Deals > 100k Review.
- 6. The Unique Name field is automatically set to Deals\_100k\_Review.
- 7. Optionally, enter a description for the new approval process in the **Description** field. For this recipe, type the text Review required for Opportunities greater than 100k:

New Approval Pro Opportun	ities	Help for this Page 💡
Step 1. En	ter Name and Description	Step 1 of 6
		Next Cancel
Enter a name	and description for your new approval process.	
Enter Nam	e and Description	= Required Information
Process Name	Deals > 100k Review	
Unique Name	Deals_100k_Review	i
Description	Review required for Opportunities greater than 100k	*
		Next Cancel

8. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 2. Specify Entry Criteria** page.

-160

- 9. Select the following field, operator, and value: **Opportunity: Amount**; greater than; **100000**.
- 10. For the second row, select the following field, operator, and value: **Opportunity: Stage**; **equals**; **Proposal/Price Quote**.
- 11. For the third row, select the following field, operator, and value: **Current User: Department**; **equals**; **Sales** (as shown in the following screenshot:

cify Entry Criteria			
se this approval process if the following crite	əria are met 💌 :		
Field	Operator	Value	
Opportunity: Amount	<ul> <li>greater than</li> </ul>	▼ 100000	AND
Opportunity: Stage	▼ equals	Proposal/Price Quote	AND
Current User: Department	▼ equals	▼ Sales	AND
None	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	•	

#### 12. Click on Next.



- 13. In the Next Automated Approver Determined By pick list, select the Manager option.
- 14. Set the checkbox to true for the Use Approver Field of Opportunity Owner.
- 15. In the **Record Editability Properties** section, choose the option **Administrators OR the currently assigned approver can edit records during the approval process** as shown in the following screenshot.

161—

Implementing Approval Processes -



By setting **Record Editability Properties** as shown, you are allowing the approving user to make changes to the record while the record is flowing through the approval process. This is useful as the record will remain locked to every user (with the exception of the administrators and approvers) and will prevent the need for edits to be made only by system administrators as this creates additional effort for administrators and risks delays during the sales process.

Step 3. Specify Approver Field a	nd Record Editability Propertie	s Step 3 of 6
	Prev	vious Next Cancel
When you define approval steps, you can options is to use a user field to automatic; any of your approval steps, select a field f approval process, it will always be locked may choose to also allow the currently as	assign approval requests to different us ally route these requests. If you want to u from the picklist below. Also, when a reco only an administrator will be able to ed signed approver to edit the record.	ers. One of your ise this option for ord is in the it it. However, you
Select Field Used for Automated	Approval Routing	
Next Automated Approver Determined By	Manager	<b>• i</b>
Use Approver Field of Opportunity Owner		
<b>Record Editability Properties</b>		
<ul> <li>Administrators ONLY can edit record</li> <li>Administrators OR the currently assigned</li> </ul>	s during the approval process. Ined approver can edit records during the ap	proval process.
	Prev	vious Next Cancel

#### 16. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 4. Select Notification Templates** page.

-162

17. Select the **100k Deal Review** template in the **Approval Assignment Email Template** lookup that was created in the *Creating an e-mail template for use with approval assignments* recipe:

Step 4. Select Notification 1	<b>emplates</b>	Step 4 of 6
		Previous Next Cancel
Select the email template that will be been assigned to them. Note that this Create a new email template	used to notify approvers tl s template will be used for	hat an approval request has all steps for this process.
Email Template		
Approval Assignment Email Template	100k Deal Review	<b>S</b>
		Previous Next Cancel

18. Click on Next.



- 19. Select the fields to display on the approval page. Here, we are selecting to show Account Name, Opportunity Name, Opportunity Owner, Amount, Close Date, Created By, Probability, and Stage.
- 20. Select the checkbox **Display approval history information in addition to the fields selected above** as shown in the following screenshot:

e approval page is where an a ds to display on this page.	approver will	actually approve or rej	ect a request.	Using the options below, choose the
proval Page Fields				
Available Fields Offer ID Opportunity Order Number Primary Campaign Source Private Probability Indicator Product Quantity Reason Lost Supplier Tender Type Tracking Number Type Stage	Add Add Remove	Selected Fields Account Name Opportunity Name Opportunity Owner Amount Close Date Created By Probability (%) Stage	Up V Down	Click here to view an example
Display approval history info     curity Settings	ormation in ad	ldition to the fields select	ed above.	



Implementing Approval Processes -

21. Click on Next.



22. Here we are leaving the default setting of initial submitter to be set to the **Opportunity Owner** value as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 6. Specify Initial Submitters Step 6 of 6
Previous Save Cancel
Using the options below, specify which users are allowed to submit the initial request for approval. For example, expense reports should normally be submitted for approval only by their owners.
Initial Submitters
Submitter Type Search: Owner of for: Find Available SubmittersNone Add Remove
Approval History on Page Layouts
Add the Approval History related list to all Opportunity page layouts
Submission Settings
Allow submitters to recall approval requests

23. Click on Save.





Here, we are presented with the **What Would You Like To Do Now?** page.

This is required because you cannot activate an approval process until you have defined at least one approval step.

24. Select the **Yes**, **I'd like to create an approval step now** option as shown in the following screenshot:



25. Click on Go!.



Here, we are shown the **New Approval Step** section and presented with the **Step 1. Enter Name and Description** page.

- 26. Enter the name of the new approval step in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Manager Review.
- 27. The Unique Name field is automatically set to Manager\_Review.
- 28. Optionally, enter a description for the new approval step in the **Description** field. For this recipe, type the text Manager review for Opportunities greater than 100k.



Implementing Approval Processes

29. Leave this as step **1** in the **Step Number** selection box as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 1. Enter Name and Description			Step 1 of 3	
			Next Cancel	
Enter a name, description, and step number for your new approval step.				
Enter Name and De	scription		= Required Information	
Approval Process Name Name Unique Name Description Step Number	Deals > 100k Review Manager Review Manager_Review Manager review for Opportunities greater than 100k 1	* *	i	
			Next Cancel	

30. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 2. Specify Step Criteria** page.

31. Choose the **All records should enter this step** option in the **Specify Step Criteria** section as shown in the following screenshot:



-166

32. Click on Next.



33. Choose the **Automatically assign using the user field selected earlier. (Manager)** option in the **Select Approver** section as shown in the following screenshot:

Step 3. Select Assigned Approver	Step 3 of 3		
Previous	Save Cancel		
Specify the user who should approve records that enter this step. Optionally, choose whether the approver's delegate is also allowed to approve these requests.			
Select Approver			
<ul> <li>Let the submitter choose the approver manually.</li> <li>Automatically assign using the user field selected earlier. (Manager)</li> <li>Automatically assign to approver(s).</li> <li>The approver's delegate may also approve this request. i</li> </ul>			
Previous	Save Cancel		

34. Click on Save.



Here, we are presented with a **What Would You Like To Do Now?** page to allow the creation of optional workflow actions. The actions will fire based on whether the approval process is approved or rejected.

35. Choose the option **No, I'll do this later. Take me to the approval process detail page to review what I've just created** as shown in the following screenshot:

What Would You Like To Do Now?	Help for this Page 🕜
You have just created an approval step. You can optionally specify approval or rejection of this step. Would you like to do that now?	workflow actions to occur upon
Yes, I'd like to create a new approval action for this step now.	Task
Yes, I'd like to create a new rejection action for this step now.	Task 💌
No, I'll do this later. Take me to the approval process detail pa created.	ge to review what I've just
Go!	


Implementing Approval Processes

36. Click on Go!.

Here, we are presented with the **Process Definition Detail** page where we can activate the approval process. Approval Processes Help for this Page 🕜 Opportunity: Deals > 100k Review « Back to Approval Process List Process Definition Detail Edit 
Clone Delete Activate View Diagram Process Name Deals > 100k Review Active Next Automated Manager of Record Owner Unique Name Deals\_100k\_Review Approver Determined By Description Review required for Opportunities greater than 100k Entry Criteria (Opportunity: Amount GREATER THAN 100000) AND (Opportunity: Stage EQUALS Proposal/Price Quote) AND (Opportunity: Closed EQUALS False) AND (Current User: Department EQUALS Sales) Record Editability Administrator OR Current Approver Allow Submitters to Recall Approval Requests Approval <u>100k Deal Review</u> Assignment Email Template Initial Submitters Opportunity Owner Created By System Administrator, 04/11/2012 15:01 Modified By System Administrator, 04/11/2012 Initial Submission Add Existing Add New 🔻 Actions i Action Type Description Record Lock Lock the record from being edited Approval Steps i New Approval Step Action Step Number Name Description Criteria Assigned Approver Reject Behavior Manager Review Manager review for Opportunities Show Actions | Edit | Del 1 Final Rejection Manager Review greater than 100k Final Approval Actions i Add Existing Add New V Description Action Type Edit Record Lock Lock the record from being edited Final Rejection Actions i Add Existing Add New 🔻 Action Type Description Edit Record Lock Unlock the record for editing Add Existing Add New 🔻 Recall Actions Description Action Type Record Lock Unlock the record for editing

37. Click on Activate.



Here, we are presented with a confirmation dialog as shown in the following screenshot:



38. Click on OK.

After creating the approval process, we need to add the approval history-related list to the appropriate opportunity page layouts (this is to allow the **Submit for Approval** button to be presented to users).

To add the approval history-related list to the opportunity page layout, carry out the following steps:

- 1. Navigate to the opportunity page layout setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Opportunities | Page Layouts**.
- 2. Choose the required opportunity page layout and click on Edit.
- 3. Click on the **Related Lists** section (at the top-left side of the page).
- 4. Drag the Approval History section onto the page as shown in the following screenshot:

Fields	Quick Find Rela	ted List Name	
Buttons	Activity History	Competitors	Open Activities
Custom Links	Approval History	Contact Roles	Opportunity Field
Visualionce Pages	Campaign Influence	Campaign Influence Label: Approval History	
Related Lists	Cases	Notes & Attachments	Products
Description Informa	tion (Header visible on ec on Sample Description	lit only)	
Description Informat Description	tion (Header visible on econ Sample Description er not visible)	lit only)	
Description Informa Descriptio Custom Links (Head Delivery State	tion (Header visible on econ Sample Description er not visible)	lit only)	
Description Informat Description Custom Links (Head Delivery State Approval History	tion (Header visible on ec on Sample Description er not visible)	lit only)	
Description Informat Description Custom Links (Head Delivery State Approval History Date	tion (Header virble on ec on Sample Description er not visible) Is	lit only)	Assigned To

5. Click on Save.



Implementing Approval Processes

How it works...

When the user has an opportunity that meets the criteria for the approval process, they may click on the **Submit for Approval** button on the **Approval History** list as shown in the following screenshot:

Acme La	arge Deal	Customize P	age   Printable View   Help for this Page 🥹
🥼 Show Feed 🔒	Follow		
« Back to List: Users Approval History [0]	Products [0]   Open Activities [0]	Activity History [0]   Notes	& Attachments [0]   Contact Roles [0]
Approval History	Submit for Approva	1)	Approval History Help 🥐
No records to display			
Opportunity Owner	N OVE ONES [Cridinge]	Allount	\$120,000.00
Private		Expected Revenue	\$90,000.00
Opportunity Name	Acme Large Deal	Close Date	04/11/2012
Account Name	Acme	Next Step	
Туре	Existing Customer - Upgrade	Stage	Proposal/Price Quote
Lead Source		Probability (%)	75%

Upon clicking on the **Submit for Approval** button, the user is then presented with the following confirmation:



When they click on **OK**, the opportunity record is sent into the approval process and their specified manager receives an e-mail using the e-mail template that was created in the *Creating an e-mail template for use with approval assignments* recipe.



The approval history-related list on the opportunity now appears with the following status:

			Cus	tomize Page   Printa	ble View   Hel	p for this Page
🥼 Show Feed 🕕 Follow						
Approval History	es [0]   <u>Activi</u>	ty History [0]	Notes & Attack	nments [0]   Contai	<u>ct Roles [0]</u>   Approval H	Partners [0]
	Data	Status	Assigned To	Actual Approver	Commente	Overall Statu
Action	Date	Status	Assigned TO	Actual Approver	Commenta	Overall Statu
Action Step: Manager Review (Pending for first approval)	Date	Status	Assigned To	Actual Approver	commenta	Overall statute
Action Step: Manager Review (Pending for first approval)	04/11/2012 21:40	Pending	<u>System</u> Administrator	System Administrator	Commenta	Pending
Action Step: Manager Review (Pending for first approval) Approval Request Submitted	04/11/2012 21:40	Pending	<u>System</u> Administrator	System Administrator	Comments	Pending

The opportunity record remains locked while the status is **Pending** and will display the locked icon (as shown in the following screenshot) until the record owner's manager approves (or rejects) the the approval process.

Acme Large Dea	l
🍌 Show Feed 🕂 Follow	
« Back to List: Users	
Approval History [2]   Products [0	Open Activities [0]   Activity History [0]
	Competitors [0]   Stage H
Opportunity Detail	Edit Delete Clone
Opportunity Owner 📃 SVP S	ales [Change]

The user's manager can access the **Items To Approve** related list from their home page to get an instant view of all the approval requests they need, to approve or reject as shown:

💎 Items to Approve	Manage All			Items to Approve Help
Action	Related To	Туре	Most Recent Approver	Date Submitted
Reassign   Approve / Reject	Acme Large Deal	Opportunity	Sales, SVP	04/11/2012 21:40



Implementing Approval Processes -

By clicking the **Approve / Reject** link, the user is presented with the **Approve/Reject Approval Request** screen as shown in the following screenshot:

Account Name	Acme					
Opportunity Name	Acme Large Deal					
Opportunity Owner	SVP Sales					
Amount	\$120,000.00					
Close Date	04/11/2012					
Created By	SVP Sales					
Probability (%)	75%					
Stage	Proposal/Price Quote					
Comments	ок					
	f					
		Approve	Reject Cancel			
Approval His	story	Approve	Reject Cancel		Approval H	istory Help (
Approval His	story	Approve	Reject Cancel Assigned To	Actual Approver	Approval H Comments	istory Help ( Overall Stat
Approval His Date Step: Manage first approval	story r Review (Pending for )	Approve	Reject Cancel Assigned To	Actual Approver	Approval H Comments	istory Help ( Overall Stat
Approval His Date Step: Manage first approval 04/11/2012 21	story r Review (Pending for ) :40	Approve Status Pending	Reject Cancel Assigned To System Administrator	Actual Approver	Approval H Comments	istory Help ( Overall Star Pending
Approval His Date Step: Manage first approval 04/11/2012 21 Approval Req	story r Review (Pending for ) :40 west Submitted	Approve Status Pending	Reject Cancel Assigned To System Administrator	Actual Approver	Approval H Comments	istory Help ( Overall Stat Pending

Finally, upon clicking the **Approve** button, the approval history for the opportunity record is marked as **Approved** and the approver can then unlock the record as shown:

	🕒 Uni	ock Record	Edit Delete Clo	New Custom		
Approval History	Submit	for Approva			Approval H	listory Help 🥐
Action	Date	Status	Assigned To	Actual Approver	Comments	Overall Status
Step: Manager Review						O Approved
	04/11/2012 22:46	Approved	<u>System</u> Administrator	<u>System</u> Administrator	ок	
Approval Request Submittee						
	04/11/2012 21:40	Submitted	SVP Sales	SVP Sales		

-172

# **7** Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- ► Converting a 15-digit Salesforce opportunity ID to 18 digits using a formula field
- ► Generating help pages for custom objects using Visualforce and a PDF document
- Building a mass delete opportunity button using a custom list button

### Introduction

In this chapter, we will look at some useful ways in which to increase productivity for administrators and advanced users (or superusers) within Salesforce CRM. There are aspects of routine Salesforce functionality and maintenance that often require manual effort such as linking Salesforce records to external systems, presenting help pages, and deleting multiple records, recipes for which will be covered.

Productivity tools for administration include the mechanism to export records from Salesforce and be able to link those records using tools such as Microsoft Excel. Here, we look at a mechanism to ensure that the IDs in Salesforce can be handled correctly within these types of external system.

Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration -

We will also look at a way to build help pages within Salesforce to display context-specific help information that increases users' productivity and frees administrators to concentrate on their tasks in hand.

Finally, we will build a routine that extends the Salesforce platform by providing a way to delete multiple opportunity records by selecting the appropriate records from the related accounts page.



Allowing users to delete multiple records may not be suitable for all organizations. However, this advanced recipe allows administrators to delete unwanted records and may also be suitable for organizations that allow superusers to delete records.

### **Converting a 15-digit Salesforce opportunity ID to 18 digits using a formula field**

Internal record IDs in salesforce.com, as found in all custom and standard objects such as the opportunity, account, contact, and so on contain 15 character text-based values.

The text values can be described as a base-62 number as each of the individual 15 characters can be either a numeric digit (in the range 0-9), a lowercase letter (in the range a-z), or an uppercase letter (in the range A-Z).

These 15 character salesforce.com values are therefore case-sensitive, since there can be two unique IDs which owe their uniqueness to the fact that they have a character(s) that differs only in case. For example, 1000000000ABC is different to 10000000000abc.

However, there are applications such as Microsoft Excel, which are not case-sensitive, that do not recognize the difference between the ID 1000000000ABC and the ID 10000000000ABC. This results in features such as the Excel function VLOOKUP, failing to match correct records from an exported salesforce.com report.

Salesforce.com realized the potential problem where the case of the source lookup value is not processed correctly within external applications that are not *case-aware*.

To provide better compatibility between salesforce.com and tools such as MS Excel, MS Access, and SQL Server salesforce.com has established an 18-character case-insensitive ID that is formed by adding a suffix to the 15 character ID, a method that respects the case-insensitive nature of these tools.

In this recipe, we will convert a 15-character case-sensitive ID to an 18-character case-insensitive ID.



#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps in order to convert a 15-digit Salesforce opportunity ID to 18 digits:

1. Navigate to the opportunity customization setup page, by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Opportunities | Fields.



Scroll down to the **Opportunity Custom Fields & Relationships** section.

2. Click on New.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 1. Choose the** field type page.

- 3. Select the Formula option.
- 4. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the Step 2. Choose output type page.

- 5. Type Opportunity ID (18 Chars) in the Field Label textbox.
- 6. Click on the Field Name textbox. When clicking out of the Field Label textbox the field name is automatically filled with the value **Opportunity\_ID\_18\_Chars**.
- 7. Set the Formula Return Type value as Text.
- 8. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 3: Enter** formula page.

9. Paste the following code:

CASESAFEID( Id )

10. In the Blank Field Handling section, select the option Treat blank fields as blanks.



Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration -

11. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 4. Establish field-level security** page.

- 12. Select the profiles to which you want to grant read access to this field via field-level security. The field will be hidden from all profiles if you do not add it to field-level security.
- 13. Click on Next.



Here, we are presented with the **Step 5. Add to page layouts** page.

- 14. Select the page layouts that should include this field. The field will be added as the last field in the first two-column section of the selected page layouts.
- 15. Finally, click on Save.

#### How it works...

The formula field appears on the opportunity detail page and displays the 18-character ID. You can see how this ID compares to the 15-character ID that is generated within the web URL as shown in the first red-circled section of the following screenshot:

C https://pag.salesforce.cc	006E000004UN6D	Q-dx	Opportunity	aited Oil & X		
File Edit View Exverter Tech	Holp		opportunity. of			
	Пер					
Home Chatter Leads Ac	counts Contacts	Opportunities (	Cases Report	s Dashboards	CRM Books	+
Create New	Opportunity United Portable	Oil & Gas C e Generator	orp. Unite s	d Oil Office		E
A Upresolved Items			Cus	tomize Page   Edit Layo	ut   Printable View	Help for this Page 🤣 👘
	+ Show Feed 🕀	Follow				
Recent Items	Approval His	tory [0]   Products [0	]   Open Activities	[1]   Activity History	[0]   Notes & Atta	chments [0]
United Oil & Gas Corp. United Oil Office Partable		Contact Roles [0]	Partners [0]	Competitors [0]   Sta	ge History [5]	
Generators	Opportunity De	etail	Edit Delete	Clone		
∂/ <u>P G</u> ♥ <u>salesforce.com</u>	Opportunity Name	United Oil & Gas C Office Portable Ger	orp. United Oil nerators	Opportunity ID (18 Chars)	006E000004U	JN6DIAW
System Administrator	Opportunity Owner	SVP Sales [Ch	ange]	Stage	Closed Won	
	Private			Reason Lost		
SVP Salas	Account Name	United Oil & Gas C	orp.	Amount	\$125,000.00	
Chatter transla	Туре	Existing Customer	- Upgrade	Expected Revenue	\$125,000.00	
Magic	Lead Source			Close Date	12/12/2013	



# Generating help pages for custom objects using Visualforce and a PDF document

In this recipe, we will step through the process of adding a custom PDF document for the purpose of showing help information. This help information will then be accessible from appropriate custom object records to provide for context-specific help information.

### **Getting ready**

Create or retrieve a PDF document that contains the required help information. Here we have an example file that is called HelpText.pdf.

Upload the PDF document into Salesforce as a static resource by carrying out the following steps:

- 1. Create or source a suitable PDF to be used to show help information.
- 2. Navigate to the **Static Resources** setup page, by clicking along the following path: **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Static Resources**.
- 3. Click on New.
- 4. Enter the name of the static resource in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text CustomObjectHelpText.
- 5. In the **File uploader** control, click on the **Browse...** button to select the document to upload from your computer. For this recipe, choose the document identified in step 1.



Ignore the **Cache Control** pick list selection and leave it as the default **Private** value (**Cache Control** is only relevant to static resources used in the Force.com sites).

6. The Static Resources setup screen appears as shown in the following screenshot:

Static R	esource	Help for this Page 🥹
Static Res	Durce Edit Save Cancel	
Static Re	source Information	= Required Information
Name	CustomObjectHelpText	
Description		A 
File	9 - Ch07 Sent for Review 1\CustomObjectHelpText.pdf Browse	
Cache Control	Private •	
	Save	

7. Click on Save.



Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration -

Now that we have a PDF document stored within Salesforce, we can reference the document from within a Visualforce page. This Visualforce page can then be accessed from the link called **Help for this Page link**, which is displayed on a custom object record detail page.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps in order to generate a help page for custom objects using Visualforce and a PDF document:

- 1. Navigate to the Visualforce pages setup screen, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter CustomObjectHelpText in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default **CustomObjectHelpText** in the **Name** field.
- 5. Paste the following code:

```
<apex:page sidebar="false" showHeader="false"
standardStylesheets="false"
action="{!URLFOR($Resource.CustomObjectHelpText)}">
```

</apex:page>

age Edit	Save Quick Save Cancel When	e is this used? Component Reference
age Informa	tion	= Required Informatio
Label	CustomObjectHelpText	
Name	CustomObjectHelpText	
Description	up Version Settings	*
Description	Up Version Settings	×.
Description	Up Version Settings	lse" standardStylesheets= 4
Description	Version Settings           A         A           page sidebar="false" showHeader="false" showHeade	<pre>lse" standardStylesheets= ^ jectHelpText) }"&gt;</pre>
Description	<pre>up Version Settings</pre>	<pre>ise" standardStylesheets= jectHelpText) }"&gt;</pre>
Description	<pre>up Version Settings</pre>	<pre>ise" standardStylesheets= ^ jectHelpText) }"&gt;</pre>

6. Click on Save.



- 7. Now set the security for the required profiles in your organization by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 8. Locate the row for the Visualforce page **CustomObjectHelpText** and click on the **Security** link.
- 9. Set the security for the required profiles.
- 10. Now, set the Visualforce page as the resource behind the **Help for this Page** link by navigating to your custom object customization setup page.
- 11. In this recipe, we have a custom object named **myCustomObject**. Here we proceed by going to **Your Name | Setup | Create | Objects | myCustomObject**.
- 12. Click on Edit.



Here, we are presented with the **Custom Object Definition Edit** page.

- 13. In the **Context-Sensitive Help Setting** option, select the **Open a window using a Visualforce page** choice.
- 14. In the **Content Name** pick list, select the Visualforce page called **CustomObjectHelpText** that we created previously as shown in the following screenshot:

Custom O			
Edit		Save Save & New Cancel	
Custom 0	bject Information		= Required Information
The singular Be careful w Label	and plural labels are used in hen changing the name o myCustomObject	n tabs, page layouts, and reports. or label as it may affect existing integration Example: Account	ons and merge templates.
Plural Label	myCustomObjects	Example: Accounts	
Starts with vowel sound			
The Object N Object Name	ame is used when reference myCustomObject	Example: Account	
Description	This is an example custo	om object used to demonstrate recipes	
Context- Sensitive Help Settina	<ul> <li>Open the standard S</li> <li>Open a window using</li> </ul>	alesforce.com Help & Training window g a Visualforce page	

15. Finally, click on Save.



Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration -

How it works...

From within the detail page of a custom record, we are presented with a link (at the top righthand side of the page) called **Help for this Page** as shown in the upcoming screenshot.

When clicking on the **Help for this Page** link, the PDF document that we uploaded previously is opened in a new window as shown in the following screenshot:

	myCustomObject     Test     Customize Page   Edit Layout   Printable View   Help for this Page      Open Activities [0]   Activity History [0]
	myCustomObject Detail Edit Delete Clone
	myCustomObject Test Owner 🔽 System Administrator [Change]
ſ	CustomObjectHelpText[1].pdf - Adobe Reader
	File Edit View Document Tools Window Help 🗶
	🖶 🄬 🗸 🌾 🖓 1 / 1 💿 🖲 72.4% 🗸 🔚 🚼 Find 🗸
	Generating help pages for custom objects using Visualforce and a PDF document
ke ty.	This is an example of help that can be shown for custom objects which is accessible fom the Help for this Page link.

### Building a mass delete opportunity button using a custom list button

In this recipe, we will build a custom list button for the deletion of opportunities that we can add to the opportunity-related list on our account detail page.

This allows us to select multiple opportunity records and delete them with a single click.



#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps in order to build a mass delete opportunity button using a custom list button:

- 1. Navigate to the opportunity **Buttons and Links** setup page, by going to **Your Name** | **Setup** | **Customize** | **Opportunities** | **Buttons and Links**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Type Mass Delete Opportunities in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default value Mass\_Delete\_Opportunities that is automatically set in the Name field.
- 5. Optionally, set the **Description** field to This custom button is for mass deleting opportunities.
- 6. In the **Display Type** field, select the option **List Button**.
- 7. Check the box Display Checkboxes (for Multi-Record Selection).
- 8. Set the Behavior pick list to Execute JavaScript.
- 9. Set the Content Source pick list to OnClick JavaScript.
- 10. Enter the following code:

}

```
// Call the salesforce.com AJAX Toolkit Javascript library
{!REQUIRESCRIPT("/soap/ajax/26.0/connection.js")}
// Get a list of possible Opportunities that can be deleted.
var oppIdsToDelete = {!GETRECORDIDS( $ObjectType.Opportunity) };
var deleteConfirmText = 'Selected ' + oppIdsToDelete.length + '
Opportunities to Delete: \nAre you sure?';
// Confirm the deletion of the selected Opportunities
if ( oppIdsToDelete.length && ( window.confirm( deleteConfirmText
))){
   // Delete the records, a function is passed to allow the
   //current page to be refreshed
   // asynchronously after the deletion has finished.
   sforce.connection.deleteIds( oppIdsToDelete,
     function() {
       top.location.replace( '/{!Account.Id}' );
      }
    );
 } else if (oppIdsToDelete.length == 0) {
   alert('Please select Opportunities to Delete.');
```



Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration —

11. Optionally, click on Check Syntax.

ustom Button or Link	Edit Save Quick Save Preview Cancel
Label	Mass Delete Opportunitic
Name	Mass_Delete_Opportunit 👔
Description	This custom button is for mass deleting opportunities.
Display Type	Detail Page Link View example
	Detail Page Button View example
	Iist Button <u>View example</u>
	Display Checkboxes (for Multi-Record Selection)
Behavior	Execute JavaScript
Content Source	
Select Field Type	Insert Field
Select Field Type Opportunity	Insert Field  Insert Merge Field  AX Toolkit Javascrint library
Select Field Type Opportunity / Call the salesforce.com AJ IREQUIRESCRIPT("/soap/a / Get a list of possible Oppo rar oppIdsToDelete = {IGET rar deleteConfirmText = 'Sel / Confirm the deletion of the f ( oppIdsToDelete.length &	Insert Field
Select Field Type Opportunity / Call the salesforce.com AJ !REQUIRESCRIPT("/soap/a / Get a list of possible Oppo rar oppldsToDelete = {IGET rar deleteConfirmText = 'Sel / Confirm the deletion of the f ( oppldsToDelete.length & // Delete the records, a fun // asynchronously after the sforce.connection.deleteId	Insert Field  Insert Merge Field  AX Toolkit Javascript library ajax/26.0/connection.js")}  rtunities that can be deleted. RECORDIDS( \$ObjectType.Opportunity)}; ected '+ oppldsToDelete.length + ' Opportunities to Delete: \nAre you sure?'; selected Opportunities & ( window.confirm( deleteConfirmText ) ) ) {  ction is passed to allow the current page to be refreshed deletion has finshed. s( oppldsToDelete,
Select Field Type Opportunity / Call the salesforce.com AJ !REQUIRESCRIPT("/soap/a / Get a list of possible Oppo rar oppldsToDelete = {IGET rar deleteConfirmText = 'Sel / Confirm the deletion of the f ( oppldsToDelete.length & // Delete the records, a fun // asynchronously after the sforce.connection.deleteld function() { navigateToUrl(windo }	Insert Field  Insert Merge Field Insert Operator  AX Toolkit Javascript library ajax/26.0/connection.js")  rtunities that can be deleted. RECORDIDS(SObjectType.Opportunity)); ected ' + oppldsToDelete.length + ' Opportunities to Delete: \nAre you sure?'; selected Opportunities & ( window.confirm( deleteConfirmText ) ) ) {  ction is passed to allow the current page to be refreshed deletion has finshed. s( oppldsToDelete, ww.location.href);
Select Field Type Opportunity / Call the salesforce.com AJ IREQUIRESCRIPT("/soap/a / Get a list of possible Oppo rar oppldsToDelete = {IGET rar deleteConfirmText = 'Sel / Confirm the deletion of the f ( oppldsToDelete.length &/ // Delete the records, a fun // asynchronously after the sforce.connection.deleteld function() { navigateToUrl(windo } );	Insert Field    Insert Merge Field  AX Toolkit Javascript library
Select Field Type Opportunity / Call the salesforce.com AJ !REQUIRESCRIPT("/soap/a / Get a list of possible Oppo rar oppldsToDelete = {IGET rar deleteConfirmText = 'Sel / Confirm the deletion of the f (oppldsToDelete.length & // Delete the records, a fun // asynchronously after the sforce.connection.deleteld function() { navigateToUrl(windd } ); else if (idsToDelete.length alert("Please select Oppor	Insert Field    Insert Merge Field  AX Toolkit Javascript library

12. Click on Save.



Now we will add the custom button to the opportunities-related list on the account page layout.

13. Navigate to the account **Page Layout** setup page, by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Page Layouts**.



183—

14. Select an appropriate page layout and click on **Edit** (an example is shown in the following screenshot):

Account	t Page Layout		Help for this Page 🥹					
This page allow After creating p by default.	This page allows you to create different page layouts to display Account data. After creating page layouts, click the Page Layout Assignment button to control which page layout users see by default.							
Account Pa	ge Layouts	Page Layout Assignment						
Action	Page Layout Name	Created By	Modified By					
Edit   Del	Account (Marketing) Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2014 10:14	<u>System Administrator</u> , 19/11/2014 23:06					
Edit   Del	Account (Sales) Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2014 10:14	<u>System Administrator</u> , 19/11/2014 23:06					
Edit   Del	Account (Support) Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2014 10:14	<u>System Administrator</u> , 19/11/2014 23:06					
Edit	Account Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2014 10:14	<u>System Administrator</u> , 27/12/2014 18:27					

- 15. Click on the **Related Lists** section (in the top-left area of the setup page).
- 16. Access the opportunities-related list and click on the **Related List Properties** icon as shown in the following screenshot:

Fields	Quick Find Rela	ted List Name	8		
Buttons	Account History	Brokers	Content Deliveries	Open Activities	Prospects
Custom Links	Activity History	Cases	Contracts	Opportunities	RFQs
/isualforce Pages	Approval History	Contact Roles	Credit Risk Profiles	Opportunities	
Related Lists	Assets	Contacts	Notes & Attachments	Partners	
	•		III		
	Sample Title	saran.sampie@co	mpany.com	1-415-555-1	212
Opportunities	New Mass D	saran.sampie@co	mpany.com	1-415-555-1	1212
Opportunities Opportunity Name	New Mass D	saran.sample@co relete Opportunities Stage	mpany.com	1-415-555-1 nt Close D	ate
Opportunities Opportunity Name Sample Opportunity Na	Mass D	saran.sample@cc elete Opportunities Stage Sample Sta	mpany.com Amour je \$123.4	1-415-555-1 nt Close D 5 04/02/20	ate 013

Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration —

17. Within the **Related List Properties** window section, scroll down to the bottom section marked **Buttons** as shown in the following screenshot:

Related List Pro	perties - Oppor	tunities	5		×
Columns Select fields to disp Available Fields Broker Close Date Week Close Date Year N	lay on the related in Number	st. You o	an also re-order the selected fields. Selected Fields Opportunity Name Stage Amount	Up	•
Closed Confirm Close Contract Duration Contract Duration	Months _	Remove	Close Date	Down	III
Sort By: Apply column info Buttons	Default @: Ascending C: Descending commation to other	page la	v iyouts:		-
	ОК	Cance	Revert to Defaults		

18. Click on the + button at the right-hand side of the **Buttons** section.

Help 🤫
buttons.
Jp
-



- 19. Select the Mass Delete Opportunities button from the left-hand side, available buttons section and move it to the right-hand side, selected button section as shown in the preceding screenshot.
- 20. Click on OK.



Here, we are directed back to the **Account Layout** page that was selected for edit previously.

21. Click on Save.

#### How it works...

Whenever appropriate users navigate to an account record, they are able to access a Mass Delete Opportunities button on the opportunity-related lists.

By selectively choosing the opportunity records that are to be deleted, using the associated checkbox, and then clicking the Mass Delete Opportunities button, all of the selected records are removed with one click.

The solution uses a custom button that is set to handle multiple records and executes JavaScript.

The custom button works by first invoking the Salesforce AJAX Toolkit which is a JavaScript wrapper around the Salesforce API. This is invoked with the code { !REQUIRESCRIPT ( " / soap/ajax/26.0/connection.js") }.



The AJAX Toolkit is available for any organization that has API access.

The JavaScript code works by retrieving the multiple opportunity records that the user has selected for deletion. This is performed with the code {!GETRECORDIDS( \$ObjectType. Opportunity) };.



GETRECORDIDS is a Salesforce function that returns an array of strings in the form of record IDs for the selected records in a list, such as a list view or related list. The syntax is { !GETRECORDIDS (object type) } where object type is the reference to the custom or standard object for the records you want to retrieve.

The JavaScript code then checks whether there are records to be deleted and if so prompts for confirmation from the user to proceed. This is executed with the code if ( oppIdsToDelete.length && ( window.confirm( deleteConfirmText ) ) ).



Productivity Tools for Superusers and Advanced Administration -



The window.confirm() method is a standard JavaScript method. The confirm() method displays a dialog box with a specified message, along with an **OK** button and a **Cancel** button. This method returns true if the visitor clicked on **OK**, and false otherwise.

When the user clicks on **OK**, the JavaScript code invokes the Salesforce AJAX Toolkit function that deletes the records that have been selected. This is performed with the code sforce. connection.deleteIds( oppIdsToDelete, .



The AJAX Toolkit allows you to issue **synchronous** or **asynchronous** calls. Asynchronous calls allow the client-side process to continue, waiting for a call back from the server. To issue an asynchronous call, you must include an additional parameter with the API call, referred to as a **callback** function. Once the result is ready, the server invokes the callback method with the result.

In our code, we are issuing an asynchronous call and using a callback function that causes the account detail page to be refreshed. This clears the opportunity-related list of the records that were deleted and is executed with the following code:

```
function() {
    top.location.replace( '/{!Account.Id}' );
}
```

#### There's more...

Carry out the following steps in order to mass delete opportunities:

- 1. Select an example account record that has more than one opportunity record associated.
- 2. Hover over (or navigate) to the opportunity-related list section.



Here, we now have the custom **Mass Delete Opportunities** button and an **Action** select all checkbox along with checkboxes to the left of each of the opportunities.

3. Set the checkbox for all of the opportunity records that you wish to delete.



4. Click on the Mass Delete Opportunities button as shown in the following screenshot:

5	Force			
[' <b>!</b> ] [	У 🕂 🔛 💌			0
h chan Far	d O Fellen	Customize Page   Edit L	ayout   Printable Vi	ew   Help for this Page 🥑
Ju- Show Fee	d 🖶 Follow			
Contacts [	2]   Opportunities [2]	Cases [0]   Open Activities [0]   Activity History [0]	Notes & Attachmen	ts [0]   Partners [0]
Opportur	nities	New Opportunity Mass Delete Opportunities		Opportunities Help  ?
Action	Opportunity Name	Stage	Amount	Close Date
🔽   Edit   Del	sForce: Opportunity	Proposal/Price Quote	\$100.00	11/08/2012
🔽   Edit   Del	sForce Test	Qualification		08/07/2012
Faicill A	ccount	1 04	1410/901-7002	

5. Upon clicking on the **Mass Delete Opportunities** button, we are presented with a confirmation message box as shown in the following screenshot:



6. Click on OK.



The records will then be deleted and the account detail page is refreshed to confirm that the selected records are no longer present.

187—

In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- ▶ Enabling the Email to Salesforce feature in Salesforce CRM
- > Obtaining system requirements information for Salesforce for Outlook
- Setting up Salesforce for Outlook configurations within Salesforce CRM
- Installing the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine
- Configuring the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine

### Introduction

E-mail applications often allow a wealth of valuable information about users' business contacts and the communications with those contacts to be stored and managed by Salesforce CRM users.

Having visibility of this information within Salesforce is highly desirable by the users of Salesforce CRM. Additionally, users often want to continue using their e-mail applications alongside Salesforce and to feel confident that the two systems are automatically kept in sync.

### Enabling the Email to Salesforce feature in Salesforce CRM

**Email to Salesforce** is a feature within Salesforce CRM that lets you assign e-mails to Salesforce records when sending messages from your external e-mail account, such as Outlook, Google Mail, and so on. Here, you can assign the e-mail to leads, contacts, opportunities, and other records in Salesforce.

When creating, forwarding, or replying to an e-mail, you simply enter your Email to Salesforce address in the **BCC** field or any recipient field.

The Salesforce system then receives a copy of the e-mail and, depending on your configuration, adds it to either the **Activity History** related list of the matched record or to the **My Unresolved Items** page, where you can then manually assign it.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to enable the Email to Salesforce feature in Salesforce CRM:

- 1. Navigate to the Email to Salesforce setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup |** Email Administration | Email to Salesforce.
- 2. Click on Edit.
- 3. Select the Active checkbox as shown in the following screenshot:

Email to Salesforce				Help for this Page 🕜
Email to Salesforce allows you to auto emails you send from third-party emai activities on lead and contact records salesforce.com.	matically log il accounts as in	G⊠ail	Conta	ward Jones
After Email to Salesforce is activated, access the My Email to Salesforce pa their unique Email to Salesforce addrr customize their settings. <u>Learn More</u>	users can ge to view ess and	Microsoft Office Outlook	Activity H Action Edit   Del	listory Subject Email: Presentation N
Email to Salesforce	Save Cancel			
Active	<b>v</b>			
Advanced Email Security Settings	🔳 🧻			
	Save Cancel			



4. Optionally, select the **Advanced Email Security Settings** checkbox to configure **Email to Salesforce** to verify the legitimacy of the sending server before processing a message.

Care Care

Before enabling this option, make sure that your users' e-mail domains support at least one of the following protocols: SPF, Sender ID, or DomainKeys.

When this option is enabled, the Salesforce system uses these protocols to verify the legitimacy of the e-mail sender's server. If the server passes at least one protocol and does not fail any, the system processes the e-mail. If the server fails a protocol or does not support any of the protocols, then the Salesforce system does not process the e-mail.

5. Click on Save.

#### There's more...

After enabling Email to Salesforce, Salesforce creates a unique Email to Salesforce address for each user.

Users can view their unique Email to Salesforce address and customize their settings by carrying out the following steps:

- 1. Navigate to the Email to Salesforce setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup |** Email | My Email to Salesforce.
- 2. In **My Acceptable Email Addresses**, enter any e-mail addresses that you use to send e-mail (you can add multiple e-mail addresses separated by commas).



Your Email to Salesforce address only accepts e-mail from addresses listed here. If you do not list any e-mail addresses, the e-mail sent to your Email to Salesforce address will not be associated to any records.

- 3. Choose whether you want e-mails to be sent to **My Unresolved Items** so that you can manually assign them or whether you want the Salesforce CRM system to try to automatically assign them.
- 4. Select whether to add e-mails to opportunities, leads, and/or contacts.

191

- 5. If leads or contacts are selected, choose how Email to Salesforce is to handle lead or contact e-mails that match duplicate records. Email to Salesforce can add the e-mail activity to either: all matching records; to the oldest duplicate record or; to the record that has greatest number of activities.
- 6. If leads or contacts are selected, you can select the option **If no matching records are found, create a task and send it to My Unresolved Items** to route the e-mail to **My Unresolved Items** if no matching records are found.



If this checkbox is not selected and Salesforce cannot identify the To or From e-mail addresses, the e-mail will not be saved in Salesforce.

7. Select **Always save email attachments** to save attachments on e-mails sent to Salesforce.



The maximum size for an attachment is 5 MB when attached directly to the related list, and the size limit for all files attached to an e-mail is 10 MB.

- 8. Select **Email me confirmation of association** to receive a confirmation e-mail when e-mails are successfully associated.
- 9. In **Excluded Domains**, enter any e-mail domain you want to exclude from automatic association. You can add multiple e-mail addresses separated by commas.

192

10. Click on  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Save}}$  as shown in the following screenshot:

My Email to Salesforce	Save
Enter the Email to Salesforce addre This is an automatically generated	ess in the BCC line of emails that you want to add to the activity history of related records. email address.
Email to Salesforce <u>emailtos</u> Address	alesforce@0-8ppflxfm953awq8u2comxc1x22pojrwha1fsmay.e.le.salesforce.com
My Acceptable Email Addresse	5
Enter all email addresses that you address you specify below can be a	use to email leads and contacts, separated by commas. Only emails sent from an email added to the activity history of related records.
My Acceptable Email Addresses	sys.admin@widgetsxyz.com
Email Associations	
When emails are sent to salesforce	e.com:
Always send them to My Unres	olved Items New!
<ul> <li>Automatically assign them to re</li> </ul>	elated salesforce.com records
Opportunities	
Leads	If duplicate records are found, associate email with:
	<ul> <li>All records</li> </ul>
Contacts	The oldest record
	The record with the most activity
	If no matching records are found, create a task for each recipient and send it to <u>My Unresolved Items</u>
<ul> <li>Always save email attachment</li> <li>Email me confirmation of asso</li> </ul>	s
Enter the email domains you don't v	vant to associate, separated by commas.
Excluded Domains	A
Add my doma	ain (widgetsxvz.com) to the list of excluded domains.
	Save Cancel

193—

### Obtaining system requirements information for Salesforce for Outlook

Many users of Salesforce also have Microsoft Outlook as their e-mail application and in order to link Outlook data with Salesforce, salesforce.com has developed **Salesforce for Outlook**.

Salesforce for Outlook is an external application that installs onto the same computer as the Outlook application and it can be used to keep contact, event, and task records synced between Salesforce and Outlook.

There are a number of steps required in the setup and configuration of Salesforce for Outlook which we cover in this chapter. Before attempting to set up and install Salesforce for Outlook, you should check that the hardware and software specifications of the users' machines—that you are planning for the installation—meet the following system requirements:

- Microsoft Outlook 2010 (64 bit and 32 bit) or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange
- Microsoft Windows 7 (64 bit and 32 bit), Windows Vista (32 bit only), or Windows XP (32 bit only) on Microsoft Exchange
- Latest versions of hotfixes for Outlook and Windows
- These specifications are correct at the time of printing but will be subject to change and you should obtain the system requirements information for Salesforce for Outlook from within Salesforce CRM.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to obtain system requirements information for Salesforce for Outlook:

1. Navigate to the Salesforce for Outlook page by going to Your Name | Setup | Desktop Integration | Salesforce for Outlook.

194

2. Click on the System Requirements button as shown in the following screenshot:



3. Review the system requirements as shown in the resulting screen (this is shown in the following screenshot):

https://na9.salesforce.com/help/doc/en/outlookcrm_sys_req.htm       ▲ ★ ♡         File       Edit       Yiew       Favorites       Tools       Help         Salesforce for Outlook System Requirements       Available in: Group, Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Developer, and Contact Manager Editions; and Trial organizations       Image: Contact Manager Editions; and Trial organizations         System Requirements       • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange       Image: Contact Windows® 7, Windows Vista® (32-bit), or Windows XP (32-bit) on Microsoft Exchange. Not supported on Apple® Macintosh® operating systems.       • Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows         Additional Requirements for Servers, Installers, and Single Sign-On Servers       Server configuration       Does salesforce.com support this server configuration?         Systems that connect to the Tes.       Yes.       No.       Internet through a proxy server       We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.         MAP and POP3 email servers No.       Terminal servers No.       Terminal servers         Installers       We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.       If you plan to use themsi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:         Microsoft NET Framework 4       Microsoft Outlook and Pounde Po	🗿 Salesforce for Outlook System Requirements - Windows Internet Explorer	
Eile       Edit       View       Favorites       Tools       Help         Salesforce for Outlook System Requirements         Available in: Group, Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Developer, and Contact Manager Editions; and Trial organizations         System Requirements         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft Windows® 7, Windows Vista® (32-bit), or Windows XP (32-bit) on Microsoft Exchange. Not supported on Apple® Macintosh® operating systems.         • Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows         Additional Requirements for Servers, Installers, and Single Sign-On         Servers         Systems that connect to the Yes.         Internet through a proxy server       We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.         IMAP and POP3 email servers       No.         Citrix® servers       No.         Installers       We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use themsi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:       Microsoft.NET Framework 4	🗅 https://na9.salesforce.com/help/doc/en/outlookcrm_sys_req.htm 🔒 🏠 🛣	<b>3</b> 3
Salesforce for Outlook System Requirements         Available in: Group, Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Developer, and Contact Manager Editions; and Trial organizations         System Requirements         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft Windows® 7, Windows Vista® (32-bit), or Windows XP (32-bit) on Microsoft Exchange. Not supported on Apple® Macintosh® operating systems.         • Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows         Additional Requirements for Servers, Installers, and Single Sign-On         Servers         Systems that connect to the Yes. Internet through a proxy server We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.         IMAP and POP3 email servers No.         Terminal servers, such as No.         Citrix® servers         Installers         We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use themsi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:         • Microsoft.NET Framework 4	<u>File Edit View Favorites Iools H</u> elp	
System Requirements         • Microsof® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange         • Microsoft Windows® 7, Windows Vista® (32-bit), or Windows XP (32-bit) on Microsoft Exchange. Not supported on Apple® Macintosh® operating systems.         • Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows         Additional Requirements for Servers, Installers, and Single Sign-On         Servers         Systems that connect to the Yes.         Intermet through a proxy server       Yes.         Intermet through a proxy server       We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.         IMAP and POP3 email servers       No.         Citrix® servers       No.         Citrix® servers       No.         Installers       We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:       Microsoft.NET Framework 4	Salesforce for Outlook System Requirements Available in: Group, Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Developer, and Contact Manager Editions; and Trial organizations	•
Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange     Microsoft Windows® 7, Windows Vista® (32-bit), or Windows XP (32-bit) on Microsoft Exchange. Not     supported on Apple® Macintosh® operating systems.     Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows  Additional Requirements for Servers, Installers, and Single Sign-On Servers  Server configuration Does salesforce.com support this server configuration? Systems that connect to the Yes. Intermet through a proxy server We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.  MAP and POP3 email servers No. Terminal servers, such as No. Citrix® servers  Installers We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers. If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools: Microsoft.NET Framework 4	System Requirements	
• Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows   Additional Requirements for Servers, Installers, and Single Sign-On   Servers   Servers   Systems that connect to the Yes. Internet through a proxy server We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.   IMAP and POP3 email servers   No.   Citrix® servers   Installers We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers. If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:	<ul> <li>Microsoft® Outlook® 2010 or 2007 on Microsoft Exchange</li> <li>Microsoft Windows® 7, Windows Vista® (32-bit), or Windows XP (32-bit) on Microsoft Exchange. Not supported on Apple® Macintosh® operation systems</li> </ul>	ш
Server s           Systems that connect to the Internet through a proxy server         Yes.           Number of the server configuration of the server configuration of the server were subtraction. We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.           IMAP and POP3 email servers         No.           Terminal servers, such as Citrix® servers         No.           Installers         We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.           If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:           Microsoft.NET Framework 4	Latest versions of hot fixes for Outlook and Windows  Additional Requirements for Servers Installers and Single Sign-On	
Server configuration         Does salesforce.com support this server configuration?           Systems that connect to the Internet through a proxy server         Yes.           Internet through a proxy server         We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.           IMAP and POP3 email servers         No.           Terminal servers, such as Citrix® servers         No.           Installers         We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.           If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:           Microsoft.NET Framework 4	Servers	
Server configuration       Does satestorce.confisupport this server configuration?         Systems that connect to the Internet through a proxy server       Yes.         Internet through a proxy servers       We support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.         IMAP and POP3 email servers       No.         Terminal servers, such as Citrix® servers       No.         Installers       We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:       Microsoft.NET Framework 4	Conversion Door releasers computer this server configuration?	
IMAP and POP3 email servers       No.         Terminal servers, such as       No.         Citrix® servers       No.         Installers       We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:         Microsoft .NET Framework 4	Systems that connect to the Yes. Internet through a proxy server we support automatic proxy detection, manual proxy, and NTLM proxy authentication. We don't, however, support manual proxy authentication.	
Terminal servers, such as       No.         Citrix® servers       Installers         Installers       We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:         Microsoft .NET Framework 4         Microsoft .NET Framework 4	IMAP and POP3 email servers No.	
Installers         We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers.         If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools:         Microsoft.NET Framework 4         Microsoft.Obudie® 0040 Tests for Office Durations	Terminal servers, such as No. Citrix® servers	
TE	Installers We don't support Microsoft Office Click-to-Run for any Salesforce for Outlook installers. If you plan to use the .msi installer, you may need to install the following additional tools: Microsoft.NET Framework 4	
(A) 1000/	11:	-



## Setting up Salesforce for Outlook configurations within Salesforce CRM

Many users of Salesforce also have Microsoft Outlook as their e-mail application and in order to link Outlook data with Salesforce, salesforce.com has developed Salesforce for Outlook.

Salesforce for Outlook is an external application that installs onto the same computer as the Outlook application and it can be used to keep contact, event, and task records synced between Salesforce and Outlook.

A Salesforce for Outlook configuration comprises the settings and parameters that determine which data users can sync between Outlook and Salesforce CRM.

Salesforce for Outlook configuration also allows you to set up configurations that allow users to edit some of their own settings.

Within the Salesforce for Outlook configuration, you can define which items are allowed to sync, which direction the data flows between Outlook and Salesforce, and what happens when data conflicts arise.



Salesforce for Outlook is available for the following editions: Group, Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Developer, and Contact Manager Editions, plus Trial organizations.

You can create multiple configurations to cater for the needs of various types of users. For example, a sales team might want to sync contacts, tasks, and events, while a senior manager might only be concerned with syncing events.

#### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to set up Salesforce for Outlook configurations within Salesforce CRM:

 Navigate to the new Outlook Configuration page by going to Your Name | Setup | Desktop Administration | Outlook Configurations. This page is shown in the following screenshot:

196

#### Chapter 8



2. Click on New Outlook Configuration.



Here, we are presented with the **New Outlook Configuration** page. Complete the following details in the **Basic Information** section as shown in the upcoming screenshot.

- 3. Enter the name of the Outlook configuration in the **Name** field. For this recipe, type the text Outlook 2010 Configuration.
- 4. Check the Active checkbox.
- 5. Optionally, enter a description in the **Description** textbox.
- 6. Leave the checkbox **Notify of product updates** checked. When an updated version of Salesforce for Outlook is available, users will see a system tray notification, which they can then click on to download the latest version. Users are alerted every 14 days until they either download the new version or hide system tray alerts.



After you define basic information for a Salesforce for Outlook configuration, you select the Salesforce for Outlook users that the configuration's settings will apply to. Complete the following details in the **Assign Users and Profiles** section as shown in the upcoming screenshot.

If you assign a user who is already assigned to a different configuration, that user is removed from the other configuration and assigned to this one. If an assigned user is also part of a profile assigned to another active configuration, the configuration that lists the user directly is used.

197-

7. Select the users or profiles for this configuration:

	nfiguration I	Edit Save	Cancel	
Basic Info	mation			= Required Information
Name	Outlook 20	10 Configuration		
Active	1			
Description				A.
Notify of product updates	<b>▼</b> i			
Assign Use	ers and Pro	files		Assign Users and Profiles Help ?
Select users fo this configuration	r this configura on.	tion. Configurations t	hat users define	e in their own setup will override
Search: Users	s 💌 for:		Find	
Search: Users Available Mer	s v for: nbers	Assigned M	Find	



**Data settings** control the sync behavior and e-mail functionality of Salesforce for Outlook. You can define the following settings using the fields in the **Data Settings** section in a Salesforce for Outlook configuration. Complete the following details in the **Data Settings** section as shown in the upcoming screenshot.

- 8. Check the **Overwrite configuration changes made by users** checkbox.
- 9. Check the **Side Panel (Beta)** checkbox to display the Salesforce side panel in Microsoft Outlook.

-198

10. Check the **Add Email** checkbox. This adds the **Add Emails** and **Send and Add** buttons to Outlook, and lets your users add up to 10 e-mails simultaneously to Salesforce.



Before activating the **Add Email** setting, you must first have enabled the Email to Salesforce feature. Email to Salesforce allows you to assign e-mails to leads, contacts, opportunities, and other records in Salesforce when e-mailing from Outlook. This is done by entering your Email to Salesforce address in the **BCC** field or any recipient field.

Salesforce then receives a copy of the e-mail and, depending on your configuration, adds it either to the **Activity History** related list of the matching records or to the **My Unresolved Items** page, where you can manually assign it.

11. Optionally, set the **Create Case** checkbox depending on your setup and requirements as shown in the following screenshot:

Data Settings	Data Settings Help ?
Overwrite configuration changes made by users Email	
When you select Side Panel and Add Email, the add email option ap Salesforce Side Panel.	pears in the
Side Panel (Beta)         Add Email         Create Case         To use this feature you must enable Email to Case	<u>e (?)</u>



We now have the options to set up the syncing of contacts, events, and task records between Salesforce CRM and Microsoft Outlook. Here we can further configure settings such as sync direction, conflict behavior, field mappings, matching criteria, and modification permissions.

- 12. In the **Contacts** subsection, set the **Sync Direction** option as **Salesforce.com to Outlook**.
- 13. Here, the Conflict Behavior option defaults to Salesforce.com always wins.



14. In the Contacts subsection, leave Edit Field Mappings unchanged.



The **Edit Field Mappings** link allows you select fields mapping between Salesforce contacts and Outlook contacts. Clicking on the link presents the mapped fields which automatically has all standard fields mapped between Salesforce and Outlook. If you have any custom fields to sync, you can add them here.

- 15. In the **Contacts** subsection, set the **If an Outlook contact matches multiple** salesforce.com contacts, sync it with the salesforce.com contact that: pick list option to **Has the most recent activity**.
- 16. In the **Contacts** subsection, check only the **Whether object is synced** checkbox present in the **Allow users to modify:** section.



Salesforce.com should be set up as the system of record when syncing contacts with Outlook due to the issue of record ownership in the Salesforce CRM application. Here we may have one user who owns a particular contact record and another user who may also have this contact record in their Outlook. By setting the sync direction as Salesforce.com to Outlook, we can avoid duplicate contact records being added to Salesforce.

- 17. In the **Events** subsection, set the **Sync Direction** option as **Sync both ways**.
- 18. In the Events subsection, set Conflict Behavior to Outlook always wins.
- 19. In the Events subsection, leave Edit Field Mappings unchanged.



The **Edit Field Mappings** link allows you to select fields mapping between Salesforce events and the Outlook calendar. Clicking on the link presents the mapped fields which automatically has all standard fields mapped between Salesforce and Outlook. If you have any custom fields to sync, you can add them here.

- 20. In the **Events** subsection, check only the **Whether object is synced** checkbox present in the **Allow users to modify:** section.
- 21. In the Tasks subsection, set the Sync Direction option as Sync both ways.
- 22. In the Tasks subsection, set Conflict Behavior to Outlook always wins.
- 23. In the Tasks subsection, leave Edit Field Mappings unchanged.





The **Edit Field Mappings** link allows you to select fields mapping between Salesforce tasks and Outlook tasks. Clicking on the link presents the mapped fields which automatically has all standard fields mapped between Salesforce and Outlook. If you have any custom fields to sync, you can add them here.

- 24. In the **Tasks** subsection, check only the **Whether object is synced** checkbox present in the **Allow users to modify:** section.
- 25. In the **Advanced Settings** section, you can leave the **HTTPTimeout**, **MaxLogFileSize**, and **MaxRetries** settings as default:

Contacts				
Sync Direction Salesforce.com to Outlook		Conflict Behavior Salesforce.com always wins		
Edit Field Ma	ppings			
P Cutt riciu inu				
contact that:	tact matches multiple s	alestorce.com co	intacts, sync it with	the salestorce.com
Has the massive of	nost recent activity 👔			
Was last	updated			
Has the o	Idest creation date			
Allow users to modify:	Whether object is synced	Sync direction	Conflict behavior	Field mappings
events				
Sync Direction		Conflict Behavior		
Sync both way	s 🔹	Outlook alway	/s wins 💌	
Allow users to modify:	ppings Whether object is synced	Sync direction	Conflict behavior	Field mappings
Tasks				
Sync Direction		Conflict Behavior		
Sync both ways		Outlook always wins		]
Edit Field Ma	ppings			
Allow users to modify:	Whether object is synced	Sync direction	Conflict behavior	Field mappings
Advanced Se	ttings		Adva	nced Settings Help ?
Adding advanced	settings allows you to c	hange the defaul	t behavior of Salest	force for Outlook
dd Advanaad G	atting	nunge ne delaa		
Auu Auvanceu Si	eung			
	e Recurring Events feat	ure impacts the v	vay calendars work rs can expect.	for Salesforce and
API users.	Learn more about the c	andinges your use		
API users.	<u>Learn more</u> about the c	nunges your use		



26. Click on Save.



- 27. In the **Contact Filters** section, set the option for **Filter By Record Ownership** to **All Contacts**.
- 28. In the **Contact Filters** section, leave the pick list selections for the **Filter By Additional Objects and Fields (Optional)** as default.
- 29. In the **Contact Filters** section, optionally set the **Other Contacts to Include** subsection checkbox for the **Sync contacts users follow in Chatter** (as shown in the following screenshot):

	Save Car	ncel			
ntact Filters			= Required Inf	= Required Information Contact Filters Hel	
ter the contacts users	of this configuration can syn	c. Contacts can be filtered	by the records they're re	elated to.	
Filter By Record Ov	wnership				
Jeleclec	1 Contacts (O) All Contacts				
- Selected	Contacts  All Contacts				
Filter By Additional	Objects and Fields (Optio	nal)			
Filter By Additional Object	Objects and Fields (Optio Field	nal) Operator	Value		
Filter By Additional Object	Objects and Fields (Optio Field	nal) Operator	Value	A	
Filter By Additional Object None None	Objects and Fields (Optio Field None None	nal) Operator None	Value v	A	
Filter By Additional Object None None	Objects and Fields (Optio Field None None	nal) Operator None None None	Value	۹ ۹ ۹	
Filter By Additional Object None None None	Objects and Fields (Optio Field None None None None None None None	Operator           •        None           •        None           •        None           •        None           •        None           •        None	Value	AA	
Filter By Additional Object None None None None None	Objects and Fields (Optio Field None None None None None None None	Operator           •        None           •        None	Value	AAA AA AA A	

30. In the Event Filters section, leave the Filter By End Date option as LAST 30 DAYS.



31. In the **Task Filters** section, leave the **Filter By Due Date** option as **LAST 30 DAYS** as shown in the following screenshot:

Event Filters
Filter the events users of this configuration can sync.
Sync: User's Records
Filter By End Date Learn more
Greater or equal to LAST 30 DAYS
Task Filters
Filter the tasks users of this configuration can sync.
Sync: User's Records
Filter By Due Date Learn more
Greater or equal to LAST 30 DAYS
Data Set Size
See how many records are included in this data set by selecting a sample user.
User: SVP Sales Get Record Count
Object Records Contact 26 Event 0 Task 0
Total 26
Save

- 32. You can use the **Get Record Count** button to check how many records will sync for a sample Salesforce for Outlook user based on the configuration's filters. If the numbers are too high or low, you can adjust the filters and check the size again. The maximum record count is 5000 per object.
- 33. Click on Save.


# Installing the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine

Now that we have created an Outlook Configuration, we can download and install the Salesforce for Outlook software to our local machine.

# **Getting ready**

Before proceeding with the setup and installation, you should decide which Outlook contacts folder you want to use for the link between Salesforce and Outlook.



If this, and the setup, is not considered appropriately, the sync between the two systems can result in duplicate records in either Outlook or Salesforce.

# For this recipe, we are creating a contacts folder in Outlook specifically for the sync with Salesforce. We are naming the folder **Salesforce** and it is created in Outlook using the following steps:

1. Click on the **Contacts** icon in the left-hand side pane as shown in the following screenshot:

Mail	1
Calendar	
Contacts	)
Tasks	

2. Click on one of the existing contact folders and then right-click on that folder to display the following options:



3. Click on New Folder.



Here, we are presented with the **Create New Folder** dialog box as shown in the upcoming screenshot.

# ]

4. In the Name: text entry field, type Salesforce.

- x Create New Folder Name: Salesforce Folder contains: Contact Items • Select where to place the folder: Deleted Items (12) . 🛄 Calendar Sea Contacts Journal 😹 Junk E-Mail [22] Notes Ξ Outbox RSS Feeds Suggested Contacts 🗿 Tacke OK Cancel
- 5. Ensure that the **Folder contains:** selection is set to **Contact Items** as shown in the following screenshot:

6. Click on OK.

Some further factors to consider for the setup and configuration of the **Salesforce for Outlook** software are as follows:

#### ▶ The syncing method between Salesforce and Outlook

Salesforce for Outlook uses the Outlook folder to limit which records sync with Salesforce. If you sync only from Outlook to Salesforce, whenever users move a record out of the synced Outlook folder, that record is then deleted from Salesforce.

If you set up the sync to be both ways or set the sync from Salesforce to Outlook whenever users delete a record in Salesforce, then that record is then deleted in Outlook.

If records are undeleted in Salesforce or they become available because of a change in sharing permissions, these records will appear in Outlook within 24 hours or when users manually sync using the icon shown in the system tray (described in detail further on).



One recommendation is to only allow syncing of contact information from Salesforce to Outlook. This prevents population of users' personal contact information in Salesforce and prevents accidental deletion of key Salesforce contact records.

### > Setting of a common time zone for users in Salesforce and Outlook

Ensure that for every user that is going to sync using Salesforce for Outlook, Windows has a matching time zone set on their local computer to the time zone that is set for their user account in Salesforce.



If the Windows time zone does not match the time zone in the Salesforce CRM user profile, the syncing of events will fail.

### Automatic insertion of e-mails into Salesforce when your users e-mail their contacts in Outlook

You can set up the integration so that users' e-mails sent from Outlook are automatically inserted into Salesforce. The option presents an **Add to Salesforce** button from within Outlook and when activated the Salesforce for Outlook facility will attempt to associate e-mails to Salesforce contacts, leads, and/or opportunity records by checking the e-mail address that has been set using both the **To** and **Cc** fields within the e-mail. This is implemented using the Salesforce Email to Salesforce feature.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to install the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine:

1. Close Outlook.



2. Navigate to the Salesforce for Outlook download page by going to **Your Name | Setup** | **Desktop Integration | Salesforce for Outlook**.

Salesforce for Ou	utlook	Video Tutorial   Help for this Page 📀
Salesforce for Outlook keeps yo	our important customer o	lata in sync between Outlook and Salesforce.
Sectors to Oddak Configuration The Information of the Information of	Welcome for O Salesforce for O tasks synced be also add emails You'll configure your choice. To sync, review you	to Salesforce for Outlook utlook keeps your contacts, events, and tween Outlook and Salesforce. You can to your Salesforce records. Salesforce for Outlook to sync folders of earn about the types of data you can r configuration.
Your Configuration and Download Options		
First, open your configuration to	o see your settings. Then,	download Salesforce for Outlook.
	View My Configuration	Download (Version 2.0.5)
1	Release Notes   System	n Requirements   .msi Installer

3. Click on **Download**.



Here, we are proceeding to click the **Download** (Version 2.0.5) button.

-208

4. Depending on your browser type, choose the option to save the file and select a folder to save the the installation . exe file as shown in the following screenshot:

Save As	andle Recomments	Contents Gaussina	Parameter Contracts Cases	X
🚱 🗢 🗣 🖉 🖉 Packt Publis	hing 🕨 Admin Cook	book 🕨 Salesforce for Outlook	✓ 4 Search	Q
🌗 Organize 👻 🏢 Views 🤜	🖌 📑 New Folder			?
Favorite Links		Name	*	Date mo
Documents		Т	his folder is empty.	
📰 Desktop				
Recent Places				
👰 Computer				
Pictures				
🚯 Music				
Recently Changed				
Searches				
Public				
Folders	^	۰ III		Þ
File <u>n</u> ame: Salesford	eForOutlook.exe			
Save as type: Applicati	on (*.exe)			•
Alide Folders			Save	<b>)ancel</b>

- 5. Click on Save.
- 6. Navigate to the folder and click on the **SalesforceForOutlook.exe** file as shown:

	✓ Admin Cookbook  ► Salesforce for Outlo	pok	<ul> <li>✓ </li> <li>✓ </li></ul>	h	<u>ک</u> 🗆 ـــ
🎍 Organize 👻	🏢 Views 🔻 📄 Open 🕚 Burn				0
Favorite Links	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size	
Docume	SalesforceForOutlook.exe	16/12/2012 11:37	Application	27,481 KB	
More »					
Folders 🔺					
Salesfo Applica	ation Size: 26.8 N	/2012 11:37 D //B	ate created: 16/12/2012	2 11:37	

209—

7. Select a language and click on **OK** as shown in the following screenshot:

Salesfo	rce for Outlook Setup
3	Please select a language: English

8. Click on Next when prompted as shown in the following screenshot:





211—

9. Select the option to accept the terms in the license agreement and click on **Next** as shown in the following screenshot:



10. Provide the location for installation on the **Select Your Installation Location** page as shown in the following screenshot:



- 11. Click on Next.
- 12. Click on **Install** to complete the installation as shown in the following screenshot:

Balesforce for Outlook Setup		×
Begin the Installation		
To begin the installation, click Install.		
	< Back Install	Cancel

13. Finally, leave the **Start Salesforce for Outlook** checkbox checked and click on **Finish** as shown in the following screenshot:



-212

14. After the setup wizard completes, a Salesforce for Outlook shortcut appears on the desktop with a red icon (shown on the left of the screenshot) and a small gray icon appears in the system tray (at the bottom-right of the screen as in the following screenshot):



# **Configuring the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine**

Now that we have installed the Salesforce for Outlook software, we can now proceed to configure the software on our local machine.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to configure the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine:

1. Open Outlook.

213—

Ensure that you have considered the creation of a Salesforce-specific contacts folder as described in the *Getting ready* section of the *Installing the Salesforce for Outlook software on a local machine* recipe. You can do this using the folder called **Salesforce** (for example) as shown in the following screenshot:

File Home Send /	Receive	Folder	r View			
New Contact     Del       New Items *     New       New     Del	ete Comm	-mail leeting lore • unicate	Change View + Current View	Move - Mail Merge OneNote Actions	<ul> <li>Forward Contact ~</li> <li>Share Contacts</li> <li>Open Shared Contacts</li> <li>Share</li> </ul>	Fi
<ul> <li>My Contacts</li> <li>Contacts</li> </ul>	<	Search	Salesforce (Ctr	1+E)		
Suggested Contacts	_		Ther Doub	e are no items to le-click here to cre	show in this view. eate a new Contact.	
Mail						
Calendar						
Contacts						
Tasks						
Items: 0	<b>≥ ⊻</b> -		All folders	are up to date.	Connected to Microsoft E	xchano

2. Now, right-click on the small gray icon located in the system tray (as shown in step 14 of the previous recipe) and click on **Settings...** as shown in the following screenshot:

Sync				
Salesforce.com	• •			
Settings				
Hide Alerts				
Help	View your	Salesforce	for Outlo	ok setting
About				

214

3. A login window appears in which you need to enter your Salesforce username and password. Optionally, check the **Remember User Name** checkbox as shown in the following screenshot:

Salesforce for Outlook Settings	×
https://login.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/authorize Change URL	
salesforce	Â
User Name	
sys.admin@widgetsxyz.com	
Password	
Remember User Name	
Login Forgot your password?	
Copiriant © 2000-2012 salestorce.com, Inc. All rights reserved.	
and a second and the best and a second and the best and a second and the second a	

4. Click on Login.

215—

5. A screen stating **"Salesforce for Outlook" is requesting permission to:** is shown. This establishes a secure connection between Outlook and Salesforce, and once established and successfully connected, you will not have to log in again (if you click on **Deny**, you are returned to the previous screen):



- 6. Click on Allow.
- 7. The configuration that was set up in Salesforce is now retrieved and a new screen is displayed to allow the setting up of the folders in Outlook that are to be synced as shown in the following screenshot:

Salesforce for Outlo	ok Settings	10.00	1. mm	X
Choose Fol	ders			
Here's how you Outlook folders	r Salesforce and Outle	ook data will sync. Click Chi	ange Folder to sync with	different
To review your	settings in salesforce.	com, see your <u>configuratio</u>	<u>n</u> .	
Contacts	0		Contacts	ange Folder
Events	0		Ch Calendar	ang <u>e</u> Folder
Tasks	0	$\longleftrightarrow$	Tasks	ange Folder
			Cancel	Next



- 8. For contacts, click on **Change Folder**.
- 9. Select the **Salesforce** folder as shown in the following screenshot:



- 10. Click on **OK**.
- 11. Salesforce is then displayed as the contacts sync folder as shown in the following screenshot:

Choose Fold	ers	look data will sync. Click C	bange Folder to synd	with different	
Outlook folders.		look data wiii syner enek e	and iger older to sync	, with different	
To review your set	tings in salesforce	.com, see your <u>configurat</u>	<u>tion</u> .		
Contacts	0		Salesforce	C <u>h</u> ange Folder	
Events	0	$\longleftrightarrow$	Calendar	Chang <u>e</u> Folder	
Tasks	0		Tasks	Ch <u>a</u> nge Folder	
			Cancel	<u>N</u> ext	

- 12. Click on Next.
- 13. Do not allow the syncing of private items. Here, do not check these checkboxes as shown in the following screenshot:

Salesforce	for Outlook Settings	x
Syn	cing Private Items	
Privat	e items in Salesforce may be viewable by others. <u>Learn more.</u>	
4	Private Contacts Include private contacts	
	Private Events Include private <u>e</u> vents	
and the second s	Private Tasks Include private <u>t</u> asks	
< <u>B</u> a	ck Save	

- 14. Finally, click on Save.
- 15. The finished screen is now displayed and the gray icon in the system tray changes color (to red) to show that it is now active as shown in the following screenshot:





16. When Salesforce for Outlook is correctly installed and configured to sync Salesforce and Outlook items, the records in the selected folders automatically start to sync.



# How it works...

When the sync is complete, the contact records in Salesforce appear in the **Salesforce** folder that we created previously as shown in the following screenshot:



219—

We can search for Salesforce contacts within Outlook using the **Side-Panel (Beta)** feature as shown in the following screenshot:



### There's more...

You can force a manual sync at any time by right-clicking on the Salesforce system tray icon and clicking on **Sync | Sync Now** as shown in the following screenshot:

Last sync time: 16/12/2012 13:18		
Sync	•	Sync Now
Salesforce.com	•	View Sync Log
Settings Hide Alerts		Sync Outlook with Salesforce
Help About		
Exit		
	<u>^ (</u>	If all the second se

-220

Tasks and events are not automatically associated to related Salesforce records when the sync between Outlook and Salesforce takes place. Users have the option instead to manually assign or set as not assigned using the **My Unresolved** items menu (which is accessed from the left-hand side bar as shown in the following screenshot):

Home Chatter Campaig	ns Leads	Accounts	Contacts	Opportuni	ities Forecast	ts Contracts	Cases	Solutions	Products	+	•
Create New	•	<sup>Synced Items</sup> My Unre	solved l	tems							Help for thi
Shortcut	Ema	ils Tasks								Turr	n off Recomm
Recent Items					Save	Cancel	Batch Edit				
	Subject	ct Status	Priority D	ue Date + A	ssign to Salesforc	e.com Records					
<ul> <li><u>aqaa qaqaa</u></li> <li><u>aqaa qaqaa</u></li> <li>John Smith</li> </ul>	Testin 123	Not g Started	Normal 1	6/12/2012	Contact  Don't Assign		2	Account	•		2
Test Thur 1					Save	Cancel					



If data is undeleted in Salesforce or becomes available because of a change in sharing permissions, it will show up in Outlook within 24 hours or when you manually sync from the system tray.



In this chapter, we will cover the following recipes:

- > Providing a Google News search for an account using a custom link
- > Building a custom Web Tab to display an external web application
- > Displaying the location of an organization using a Google Map and a Visualforce page

# Introduction

In this chapter, we provide recipes that integrate Salesforce CRM with external online tools which extend the power of the CRM platform and provide enhanced functionality for your users.

These recipes provide features and functionality that present information stored outside Salesforce using mechanisms that are not provided natively within Salesforce.

# Providing a Google News search for an account using a custom link

When dealing with customers it is always useful for the users of Salesforce CRM to be aware of the latest news related to the customer. News information related to customers can be retrieved from sources such as Google News and is useful for all users whether from the sales team, marketing, or perhaps the finance team.

In this recipe we will provide a link, displayed on an **Account Detail** page, that when clicked opens a new window showing a Google News result for the name of the account.

### How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a Google News search for an account using a custom link:

 Navigate to the custom web tab setup page by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Buttons and Links. Scroll down to the Custom Buttons and Links section as shown in the following screenshot:

Buttons a	nd Links Unt				
Below ar layout.	e the buttons and links for <i>i</i>	Accounts. To add cus	tom links to	the links se	ction of
Buttons	can display on detail pages	, related lists, and list	views:		
Standa	<ul> <li>To customize buttons on To customize buttons on appears.</li> <li>To customize buttons on</li> <li>ard Buttons and Links</li> </ul>	detail pages, edit the related lists, edit the list views, edit the Ac	Accounts p related list p counts list v	age layout. roperties on iew layout in	the pages of the pages of the page of the
Action	Label	Name		Overridden	Display
Edit	Accounts Tab	Tab			Standa
Edit	List	List			Standa
Edit	View	View			Standa
Edit	Edit	Edit			Standa
Edit	New	New			Standa
Edit	Delete	Delete			Standa
Edit	Enable Customer Portal Use	r EnableCustomerF	ortalUser		Standa
Edit	View Customer Portal User	ViewCustomerPo	talUser		Standa
Custor	n Buttons and Links	New Default C	ustom Links		
Action	Label	Name	Display Typ	be Beha	vior
Edit LD	a Billing	Billing	Detail Page	e Link Displ	av in ne



- 2. Click on **New**, as shown in the preceding screenshot.
- 3. Enter Account News in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default Account\_News in the Name field.
- 5. Choose the option of **Detail Page Link** in the **Display Type** options choices.
- 6. Select the value **Display in new window** in the **Behavior** picklist.
- 7. Select the value **URL** in the **Content Source** picklist.
- 8. In the URL textbox, paste the following code (as shown in the screenshot further below):

http://news.google.com/news?hl=en&hdlOnly=1&q={!Account.Name}

Custom Button or Link	Edit	Save	Quick Save	Preview	Cancel	
Label	Account News	3				
Name	Account_New	s	i			
Description					*	
Display Type	Operation Detail Page	e Link View	example			
	Detail Page	e Button Vie	ew example			
	List Buttor	Niew exam	iple			
Behavior	Display in nev	v window			▼ <u>View</u>	Behavior Option
Content Source	URL	•				
	•					
Select Field Type	Insert Field					
Account	Insert Mer	ge Field	•	Insert (	Operator 🔻	
http://news.google.com/new	s?hl=en&hdlOnly=	1&q={!Acco	unt.Name}			
Check Syntax						

225—

9. Click on Save.



- 10. Click on OK.
- 11. We can now add the custom link to the page layout within the account page layout setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Page Layouts**.
- 12. Determine which Account Page Layout to include the Google News search custom link on and click on **Edit**.

/	Accour	nt Page Layo	ut	Help for this Page 🕜
T A U	This page all After creating Isers see by	ows you to create differe page layouts, click the default.	ent page layouts to display Acco Page Layout Assignment butto	ount data. n to control which page layout
ſ	Account P	age Layouts	New Page Layout Assignment	]
	Action	Page Layout Name	Created By	Modified By
	Edit   Del	Account (Marketing) Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 19/11/2012 23:06
	Edit   Del	Account (Sales) Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 19/11/2012 23:06
	Edit   Del	Account (Support) Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 19/11/2012 23:06
C	Edit   Del	Account Layout	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	System Administrator, 25/12/2012 21:42

Here we are editing the home page layout named Account Layout (as shown in the preceding screenshot).

13. Click on Edit.

We are now presented with the Account Layout edit page.



Fields Buttons Custom Links Visualforce Pages Related Lists	Quick Find Custom Link N Blank Space Account News Billing	ame 🗴
System Information (Head	ler visible on edit only) Sample User	Last Modified By Sample User
Description Information ( Description	Header visible on edit only) Sample Description	

14. Click on the **Custom Links** text at the top-left section of the page as shown in the following screenshot:

- 15. Locate the **Account News** custom link and drag it to the **Custom Links** section (as shown in the preceding screenshot).
- 16. Click on Save.

# How it works...

The **Account News** custom link now appears in the **Custom Links** area of the main **Account Detail** page (before the related lists) for each Account record, as shown in the following screenshot:

Created By	IT Manager, 30/06/2012 10:14	Last Modified By	System Administrator, 25/12/2012 21:39
Description			
Custom Links	Billing	ccount News	
	Edit Delet	Log A Call	
🚉 Contacts	New Contact	Merge Contacts	Contacts Help <i>?</i>



When clicking the link, the name of the account is passed to the Google News search page which is then opened in a new window as shown in the following screenshot:



# Building a custom Web Tab to display an external web application

Having a custom Web Tab enables the display of web content or applications embedded within the Salesforce CRM application window.

You can create custom Web Tabs to allow Salesforce users to view the company intranet or a wiki that is used frequently so that they can find the information they need without leaving the Salesforce CRM application.

In this recipe we will display an example Web Tab where we pass information specified from within Salesforce, the purpose of which is to demonstrate the mechanism involved in setting up custom Web Tabs for your specific external web applications.

# How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to create a Web Tab to display an external web application:

1. Navigate to the custom web tab setup page by going to **Your Name | Setup | Create** | **Tabs**.

Custor	n Tabs		Help for this Page 🕜
You can crea functionality.	ate new custom tal	os to extend salesforce.com	functionality or to build new application
Custom Obje you to embe allow you to	ect Tabs look and l d external web app embed Visualforce	behave like the standard tab lications and content within Pages.	s provided with salesforce.com. Web Tabs allow the salesforce.com window. Visualforce Tabs
Custom O	bject Tabs	New What Is This?	
Action	Label	Tab Style	Description
Edit   Del	Assessments	💧 Bell	
Edit   Del	Brokers	Presenter	
Web Tabs	;	New What Is This?	)
No Web Ta	ibs have been define	ed	

- 2. Scroll down to the Web Tabs section as shown in the preceding screenshot.
- 3. Click on New.



We will be presented with the **Step 1. Choose Tab Layout** page. Here you can either choose to have the web page content run across the **Full page width**, or as **2 columns with salesforce.com sidebar** to help users navigate within Salesforce CRM (as shown in the screenshot further below).

4. Select the **2 columns with salesforce.com sidebar** option (as shown in the following screenshot).



5. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 2. Define Content and Display Properties** page (as shown in the screenshot further below).

- 6. Enter CRM Books in the Tab Label textbox.
- 7. Accept the default CRM\_Books, auto populated text in the Tab Name text box.



8. In the **Tab Style** field, click on the lookup icon and select an icon for the new Web Tab. Here we are selecting the **Books** style (as shown in the following screenshot).

https://na9.salesforce.com	/_ui/comm	on/html/pages/MotifP	icker?id=p!	52			
Tab Style Selector		Create your o	wn style				
lide styles which are used on oth	er tabs						
liplane[1]	3	Alarm clock[1]	<b>é</b>	Apple	۵	Balls	
💼 Bank[1]		Bell[1]	6	Big top	2	Boat	
🕌 Books		Bottle[1]	<b>W</b>	Box	6	Bridge	
a Building[1]		Building Block[2]		Caduceus[1]	0	Camera	
🍃 Can	4	Car[1]	61	Castle	۲	CD/DVD	
Cell phone	<b>-</b>	Chalkboard[1]	1	Chess piece		Chip	
Circle	٠	Compass[1]	5	Computer	-	Credit card	
CRT TV[1]	3	Сир	4	Desk		Diamond	
Dice		Factory[1]	-	Fan	/	Flag	

9. Leave the **Content Frame Height (pixels)** setting at **600**.



You can make Web Tabs available in the mobile application by selecting the **Mobile Ready** checkbox. However, for this recipe, we are not making this Web Tab mobile ready.

10. Optionally select a splash page and add a description. Here we are leaving these sections blank (as shown in the following screenshot).

Step 2. Define	Content and Displa	y Properties		Step 2 of §
Fill in information a	bout the web tab.			
Display Proper	ties			
Tab Label	CRM Books	1	ales <b>force</b> .com	Server: Treased   Support   English (Re
Tab Name	CRM_Books	i	forre Campaigns Leads Accounts	Opportunities Forecasts
Tab Style	🕌 Books	🔜 🕙 🧯		ГГ ( 1 <sup>с</sup>
Content Frame Height (pixels)	600	3 ×	etonictions centiliens baltions faint	
Mobile Ready	What Is This?	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	Balannung Kal Sanbaka Kataka Kataka Kataka Kataka Kataka Kataka Kataka	-3
Splash Page				
(Optional) Choos	e a Home Page Custom Lir	nk to show as a sp	plash page the first t	ime your users click on this
Splash Page Custom Link	None	•		
Description				
Description		*		
				Previous Next Cance



11. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 3. Enter the URL Details** page (as shown in the screenshot further below).

12. Paste the following web URL into the **Button or Link URL** textbox (as shown in the following screenshot).

http://www.packtpub.com/books?keys=crm

Step 3. Enter the URL	Details	Step 3 of 5
Enter the web page address use one or more merge fields	in the Link URL field. You can enter a simple URL just as it appears in the bro s to insert organization-specific data from salesforce.com into URL parameters	owser address bar, or you can s.
Examples:		
Simple With Merge Field	http://www.google.com http://www.google.com/search?q={!Org_Name}	
Available Merge Fields		
Available Merge Fields Select Field Type Organization Fields  Select Field Copy Merge Field Value Copy and paste the merge field	▼ I value into your template below.	
Button or Link URL		Required Information
http://www.packtpub.com/bo	poks?keys=crm	
Preview Web Tab	5.0	
Unicode (UT	F-8)	
		Previous Next Cancel

13. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 4. Add to Profiles** page (as shown in the screenshot further below).

232

14. Select the profiles to which you want to grant visibility to this web tab. Here, we are setting tab visibility for all profiles (as shown in the following screenshot).

Apply one tab     Apply a differ	o visibility to all profiles Default On
Profile	Tab Visibility
Authenticated Website	Default On 💌
Contract Manager	Default On 💌
Custom: Marketing Profile	Default On 💌
Custom: Sales Profile	Default On 💌
Custom: Support Profile	Default On 💌
Customer Portal Manager Custom	Default On 💌
Customer Portal Manager Standard	Default On 💌
Force.com - Free User	Default On 💌
System Administrator	Default On 💌
System Administrator Clone	Default On 👻

#### 15. Click on Next.



We will be presented with the **Step 5. Add to Custom Apps** page (as shown in the following screenshot).

ioose the custom apps for which the new custo ibility of tabs from the detail and edit pages of	m tab will be available. You may also examine or alter th each Custom App.
Custom App	V Include Tab
Platform	
Sales	
Call Center	
Marketing	
Append tab to users' existing personal customiza	tions





16. Finally, click on Save.

# How it works...

The custom Web Tab **CRM Books** now appears in the list of tabs and upon clicking this tab, the URL that is specified is accessed, with the web page content retrieved into Salesforce CRM.

You can see how this looks in the following screenshot:

Home Chatter Leads Acco	ounts Contacts Opportunities Cases Reports Dashboards CRM Books +
Create New	[PACKT]         Product Categories ▼         Support ▼         Article Network
Shortcut           Shortcut           Image: Contract of the second	Login: Password: Forgotten password? Register
Recent Items	Home > Books
<ul> <li>salesforce.com</li> <li>Matic</li> <li>0000</li> <li>USA</li> <li>United Oil &amp; Gas Corp. United Oil Office Portable Generators</li> </ul>	All Books Books and eBooks Show books in All Books Forthcoming Title
United Oil & Gas Corp. Acme Large Deal	
GB           Image: Acme           System Administrator	Salesforce CRM: The Definitive Admin Handbook Published: October 2011 Our price: 536 99
Custom Links	See more
Personal Setup Training	Microsoft Dynamics CRM 2011 New Oracle Manaç

# Displaying the location of an organization using a Google Map and a Visualforce page

When dealing with customers it is always useful for the users of Salesforce CRM to be aware of the location of the customer. Address information related to customers can be used to retrieve map details from sources such as Google and is useful for all users whether from the sales team, marketing, or perhaps the finance team.

In this recipe we will provide a Visualforce page, displayed on an **Account Detail** page, that displays a Google Map showing a location marker for the address of the account.

# How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to display the location of an organization using a Google Map and a Visualforce page:

- 1. Navigate to the Visualforce Pages setup screen by going to **Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages**.
- 2. Click on New.
- 3. Enter AccountGoogleMap in the Label field.
- 4. Accept the default AccountGoogleMap in the Name field.
- 5. Paste the following code (as shown in the following screenshot):

```
<apex:page standardController="Account">
<script type="text/javascript" src="https://maps.google.com/maps/</pre>
api/js?sensor=false"></script>
<script type="text/javascript">
function initialize() {
  var map;
  var mapOptions = {
    zoom: 13,
    mapTypeId: google.maps.MapTypeId.ROADMAP,
    mapTypeControl: false
  }
  var mapMarker;
  var geocoder = new google.maps.Geocoder();
  var address = "{!SUBSTITUTE(JSENCODE(Account.BillingStreet),'\
r\n',' ')}, " + "{!Account.BillingCity}, " + "{!
Account.BillingPostalCode }, " + "{!Account.BillingCountry}";
  geocoder.geocode( {address: address}, function(results, status)
{
    if (status == google.maps.GeocoderStatus.OK && results.length)
ł
      if (status != google.maps.GeocoderStatus.ZERO RESULTS) {
        map = new google.maps.Map(document.getElementById("map"),
mapOptions);
        map.setCenter(results[0].geometry.location);
        mapMarker = new google.maps.Marker({
            position: results[0].geometry.location,
            map: map,
            title: "{!Account.Name} " + address
        });
      }
    } else
```



```
document.getElementById("map").innerHTML = "Unable to find
or display a map for {!Account.Name}'s billing address : " +
address;
});
}
</script>
<div id="map" style="width:100%;height:300px"></div>
<script>
initialize();
</script>
</apex:page>
```

/isualfor	ce Page	Help for this Page
Page Edit	Save Quick Save Cancel Where	is this used? Component Reference
Page Inform	ation	= Required Information
La Na	ibel AccountGoogleMap ime AccountGoogleMap	
Descrip	ion	* *
2 <scri 3 <scri 4 funct 5 vai</scri </scri 	<pre>::page standardcontroller="Account"&gt; .pt type="text/javascript" src="https://s .ion initialize() { : map;</pre>	maps.google.com/maps/api/je
6 Vai 7 2 8 1 9 1 10 }	: mapOptions = { :oom: 20, :apTypeId: google.maps.MapTypeId.ROADMAP :apTypeControl: false	,
11 va: 12 va: 13 va: 14 geo	: mapMarker; : geocoder = new google.maps.Geocoder(); : address = "{!SUBSTITUTE(JSENCODE(Accou coder.geocode( {address: address}, func	nt.BillingStreet),'\r\n',' = tion(results, status) {
15 3 16 17 18	<pre>.f (status == google.maps.GeocoderStatus if (status != google.maps.GeocoderStatu map = new google.maps.Map(document.g map.setCenter(results[0].geometry.lo</pre>	.OK && results.length) { us.ZERO_RESULTS) { etElementById("map"), mapOp cation);
19 20 21 22	<pre>mapMarker = new google.maps.Marker({     position: results[0].geometry.lo     map: map,     title: "{!Account.Name}" + addre</pre>	cation,

-236

- 6. Click on Save.
- 7. Now set the security for the required profiles in your organization by going to Your Name | Setup | Develop | Pages.
- 8. Locate the row for the Visualforce Page AccountTabOverride and click on the Security link, as shown in the following screenshot:

Visualforce	Pages		
Visualforce Pages provide a robust and easy to use mechanism to create new an applications to optimize your users' productivity.			
View: All  Create	New View		
	A   B   C   D   E   F   C	3   H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O   P	(
		New	
Action	Label 1	Name	I
Edit   Del   Security	AccountGoogleMap	AccountGoogleMap	
Edit   Del   Security	AccountTabOverride	AccountTabOverride	
Edit   Del   Security	AccountViewOverride	AccountViewOverride	

- 9. Set the security for the required profiles.
- 10. Click on Save.

To display the Account Google Map within an account record we'll add the page to a new section on an Account Page Layout by carrying out the following steps:

- 1. Navigate to the Account Page Layout setup page by going to Your Name | Setup | Customize | Accounts | Page Layouts.
- 2. Determine which Account Page Layout to place the Account Google Map Visualforce page on and click on Edit.



Here we are editing the home page layout named **Account Layout**.



- Fields Quick Find Field Name x Buttons + Section Account Owner Active A Custom Links \* Blank Space В Account Site Annual Consumptio. Visualforce Pages Account Name Account Source Annual Consumptio. B **Related Lists** Annual Revenue Account Number Account Status в • 111 Log A Call Redirect ClonePlus Account Information (Header visible on edit only) Account Owner Sample User Rating Sample Rating Account Site Sample Account Site a Rating Graphic Sample Rating Graphic Phone 1-415-555-1212 Sample Account Account Name Name Parent Account Sample Account Fax 1-415-555-1212 Account Number Sample Account Website www.salesforce.com Number Sample Type Ticker Symbol Sample Ticker Type Symbol Industry Sample Industry Ownership Sample Ownership Annual Revenue \$123.45 Employees 76,859 **Credit Score** 408 Annual Revenue Sample Annual **Revenue Graphic** Graphic SIC Code Sample SIC Code **Credit Score** VF Credit Score Address Information (Head Sui 🔽 Section Billing Address Landmark @ One Market San Francisco, CA
- 3. Create a new section by dragging a **Section** icon from the top menu area into an appropriate position on the Account Detail page, as shown in the following screenshot:



Upon placing the new section we will be presented with the **Section Properties** page (as shown in the following screenshot).

4. Enter Google Map in the Section Name field.



5. Choose the Layout option as 1-Column (as shown in the following screenshot):

Section Properties	×
Section Name Google N Display Section Header On 📝 Detail	lap Page age
Layout	Tab-key Order
l-Column 🔘 2-Column	eft-Right
ОК	Cancel

- 6. Click on **OK**.
- 7. Click on the **Visualforce Pages** text at the top-left section of the page as shown in the screenshot further below.
- 8. Locate the **AccountGoogleMap** Visualforce page and drag it to the **Google Map** section (created previously) as shown in the following screenshot:

Save V Quick Save Pr	eview As 🔻 Cancel	🔷 Undo 🐴 Redo	Layout Propert		
Fields	Quick Find Page	Name 🗴			
Buttons	→ Section	AccountViewOverride			
Vieualforce Dages	* Blank Space	AccountViewOverri			
Polated Lists	AccountGoogleMap	AdvVFWebinarViewS			
Itelated Lists	AccountTabOverride Credit Score				
			Graphic		
\star 🍳 Account Name	Sample Account Name	Phone	1-415-555-1212		
Parent Account	Sample Account	Fax	1-415-555-1212		
Account Number	Sample Account Number	Website	www.salesforce		
Туре	Sample Type	Ticker Symbol	Sample Ticker Symbol		
Industry	Sample Industry	Ownership	Sample Owners		
Annual Revenue	\$123.45	Employees	76,859		
Annual Revenue Graphic	Sample Annual Revenue Graphic	Credit Score	408		
SIC Code	Sample SIC Code	Credit Score	VE Credit Sc		
Google Map					
		<ul> <li>AccountGoogleMap</li> </ul>			
Address Information (I	Address Information (Header visible on edit only)				
Billing Address	Suite 300, The Landmark @ One Market				


Integrating Salesforce CRM with External Online Tools -



Upon placing the Visualforce page, we will be presented with the following screen, where we can change the properties of the Visualforce page.

L'HSIOM LINKS			
Visualforce Pages	* Blank Space	AccountViewOverri	
Related Lists	AccountGoogleMap	AdvVFWebinarViewS	
	AccountTabOverride	Credit Score	
	Number	-	
Туре	Sample Type	Ticker Symbol	Sample Ticker Symbol
Industry	Sample Industry	Ownership	Sample Ownership
Annual Revenue	\$123.45	Employees	76,859
Annual Revenue Graphic	Sample Annual Revenue Graphic	Credit Score	408
SIC Code	Sample SIC Code	Credit Score	VF Credit Score
Google Man			
			•
AccountGoogleMap			

- 9. Locate the main buttons at the top of the screen.
- 10. Click on Save.

# How it works...

The lines of code that display the location of an organization using a Google Map and a Visualforce page can be seen in the following screenshot:



#### Chapter 9



The following section describes how this set of code works.

<apex:page standardController="Account">

This is the opening tag for our Visualforce page which uses a standard Controller for the Account Object. This allows the page to be embedded into the **Account Details** page and access the values from the record. For example, { !Account .BillingCity}.

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="https://maps.google.com/maps/api/
js?sensor=false"></script>
```

This calls the JavaScript library that allows the Google Map functionality to appear on our web page:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
function initialize() {
```

Integrating Salesforce CRM with External Online Tools -

This is the opening tag for the JavaScript function that our Visualforce page requires to call the Google Map code:

```
var map;
var mapOptions = {
  zoom: 13,
  mapTypeId: google.maps.MapTypeId.ROADMAP,
  mapTypeControl: false
}
```

The preceding code sets the options for the Google Map code where:

- zoom: This is used to specify the initial zoom level of the map. This value has to be an integer between 0 and 19 where 0 is fully zoomed out and 19 is fully zoomed in.
- mapTypeId: This is used to specify the type Google Maps. This value defines what the initial map type would be where the options are ROADMAP (which is a normal map); SATELLITE (which is a satellite image); HYBRID (which displays satellite images with roads and labels overlayed on it); TERRAIN (which displays a map with physical features such as terrain and vegetation).
- mapTypeControl: This is used to specify whether the mapTypeControl will be displayed or not. The mapTypeControl is the control positioned in the upper-right corner of the map from which you can choose what map type to show. Set it to true to display it and to false to hide it. Note that the default value is true.

```
var mapMarker;
var geocoder = new google.maps.Geocoder();
```

This invokes the Google Map Geocoder object. To specify a location, Google Maps requires a latitude and longitude. So, our main code step will be to convert the physical Account Billing address into the necessary mapping format. This process has its own scientific term which is geocoding.

```
var address = "{!SUBSTITUTE(JSENCODE(Account.BillingStreet),'\
r\n',')}, " + "{!Account.BillingCity}, " + "{!Account.
BillingPostalCode}, " + "{!Account.BillingCountry}";
```

This formats the Salesforce Account Billing address into a format suitable for passing to the Google Map JavaScript library. It uses the merge fields such as {!Account.BillingCity} to obtain the address data elements.

This first part which formats the Account Billing Street using the following

 $\{ ! SUBSTITUTE (JSENCODE (Account.BillingStreet), '\r\n', ' ') \}$  uses Salesforce functions to strip the multiline address of non JavaScript friendly characters and then replaces the newline characters with spaces. JSENCODE encodes text and merge field values for use in JavaScript by inserting escape characters, such as a backslash (\), before unsafe JavaScript characters, such as the apostrophe ('). SUBSTITUTE substitutes new text for old text in a text string.

```
geocoder.geocode( {address: address}, function(results, status) {
```



This is where the actual call for the geocoding starts. The geocode method uses an object address as well as a callback function to give the results of the mapping attempt. The parameter, { address : address }, simply passes the address which we formulated above passed to the address object.

```
if (status == google.maps.GeocoderStatus.OK && results.length) {
    if (status != google.maps.GeocoderStatus.ZERO_RESULTS) {
```

This line handles the results of the geocoding call. After the geocoding finishes, the callback function is invoked with a results array and status that is used to determine success or failure.

```
map = new google.maps.Map(document.getElementById("map"),
mapOptions);
```

Having reached this step of the code would signify a successful geocode. Using the mapOptions that we specified earlier, this line is where the map is constructed. The constructed map is passed to an HTML div tag which is covered further.

```
map.setCenter(results[0].geometry.location);
mapMarker = new google.maps.Marker({
    position: results[0].geometry.location,
    map: map,
    title: "{!Account.Name} " + address
});
} else
```

The line of code above sets the marker for the map and uses the Salesforce Account Name merge field to set the title for the marker on the map.

```
document.getElementById("map").innerHTML = "Unable to find or
display a map for {!Account.Name}'s billing address : " + address;
```

This line only appears where the geocoding call failed to return a successful response and set the error message in the HTML div tag which is covered further below.

```
});
}
</script>
</div id="map" style="width:100%;height:300px"></div>
```

This is the HTML div tag called map which is where either the constructed Google Map code or our constructed error message is rendered. Here we have set the width to be the maximum width of the Salesforce detail page and a height of 300px.

```
<script>
    initialize();
```

Integrating Salesforce CRM with External Online Tools -

This is the where our Visualforce page immediately invokes the calls to the Google Map JavaScript libraries and the function calls as specified above.

</script> </apex:page>

This is the closing tag for our Visualforce page which uses a standard Controller for the Account Object.

The Account Google Map now appears on an Account Detail page (showing the address that is set in the Billing Address) for each Account record as shown in the following screenshot:



-244

# Index

#### **Symbols**

2 columns with salesforce.com sidebar option 230

**15 digit Salesforce opportunity ID** converting to 18 digits, formula field used 174-176

18 digits

conversion from 15 digit Salesforce opportunity ID, formula field used 174-176

100k Deal Review template 163

#### A

account Google News search providing, custom link used 224-228 with prepopulated fields, Log A Call button creating from 89-94 Account credit score rendering graphically, CSS used 62, 63 rendering graphically, Google image chart used 66-68 rendering graphically, JavaScript used 62, 63 rendering graphically, Visualforce used 62-64 Account Detail page 53, 71 **Account Google Map** about 244 displaying, within account record 237-241 account name change by non-system administrators, stopping with validation rule 138-140 Account News custom link 227 Account Revenue field 47

account revenue indicator building, custom images used 46-53 building, formula field used 46-53 Account Validation Rule Edit page 143, 145 AJAX Toolkit 186 approval assignments e-mail template, creating for use with 154, 155 Approval History list 170 approval process about 153 building 154 user setting up, to be associated with 156, 157 Approve button 172 asynchronous call 186

### В

BCC field 190 Browse... button 177 Button or Link URL textbox 232

#### С

Cache Control 177 calendar pop ups historic year range populating from 1920, for date fields 82-89 year range extending to 2025, for date fields 76-82 Calendar Year Extender checkbox 80 callback function 186 Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) about 19 used, for rendering Account credit score graphically 62-64

case priority flags displaying, formula field used 44-46 displaying, salesforce.com images used 44-46 chatter feeds automatically collapsing, on home page 20-24 on home page, removing 25-29 Close Date field 106.134 clutter-free Account tab creating, Visualforce used 54-57 **Component Position option 17, 39** confirm() method 186 **Contact Filters section 202 Context-Sensitive Help Setting option 179** Create New Approval Process button 159 Credit Score Graphic image 72 CRM Books 234 custom images used, for building account revenue indicator 46-53 custom link on sidebar, using to create Personal Setup link 7-9 used for providing Google News search, for account 224-228 using, to open training in new window from sidebar 11-15 custom list button used, for building mass delete opportunity button 180-187 CustomObjectHelpText 179 custom objects help pages generating for, PDF document used 177-180 help pages generating for. Visualforce used 177-180 D

Data Settings section 198 date fields historic year range populating from 1920, on calendar pop ups 82-89 year range extending to 2025, on calendar pop ups 76-82

#### deals

greater than USD 100,000, opportunity approval process creating for 158-169 Description field 51, 155 Detail Page Button option 91 discover what's new in this release button on home page, removing 99-104 Display in new window option 11

#### Ε

Edit Field Mappings link 200 Email Body field 156 e-mail template creating, for use with approval assignments 154, 155 Email to Salesforce enabling, in Salesforce CRM 190-192 Error Location option 139, 144, 146, 150 Error Message section 139 external web application displayed, by creating custom Web Tab 229-233

#### F

FamFamFam **URL 47** field update workflow used, for generating opportunity close date 129-134 used, for setting default opportunity name 122-128 formula option 50, 175 used, for building account revenue indicator 46-53 used for calculating week number, for opportunity close date 108-111 used, for converting 15 digit Salesforce opportunity ID, to 18 digits 174-176 used for deriving year and month values, from

opportunity close date 106-108 used, for displaying case priority flags 44-46

#### G

geocoding 242 Get Record Count button 203 **Google Chart URL 73 Google image chart** used, for rendering Account credit score graphically 66-68 **Google Map** used, for displaying organization location 234-237 Google Map code, options mapTypeControl 242 mapTypeId 242 zoom 242 **Google News search** providing for account, custom link used 224-228 **Google-o-meter chart** about 66 **URL 66** 

#### Η

hack 75 Help for this Page link 178, 180 help pages generating for custom objects, PDF document used 177-180 generating for custom objects, Visualforce used 177-180 Hide Chatter button 21 home page discover what's new in this release button, removing 99-104 integrated view of cases, displaying 94-99 news-ticker message, creating on 16-19 Opportunity Sales Stages, displaying 34-41 Send An Email button, adding 29-33 **Home Page Chatter feeds** automatic collapse, steps for 20-24 removing 25-29 HTML Area option 17, 22

#### I

integrated view of cases displaying, in home page 94-99

### J

JavaScript used, for rendering Account credit score graphically 62-64

#### L

Log A Call button creating, from accounts with prepopulated fields 89-94

#### Μ

mapTypeControl 242 mapTypeId 242 marquee tag URL 20 mass delete opportunity button building, custom list button used 180-187 My Unresolved Items page 199

#### Ν

New button 16, 30 New Custom Component wizard 98 news-ticker message creating, on home page 16-19 Next Automated Approver Determined By pick list 161 Next button 16, 84 non-system administrators stopping, from changing account names with validation rule 138-140

#### 0

opportunity Reason Lost field creating, validation rule used 148-152 opportunity approval process building, for deals greater than USD 100,000 158-169

247 —

opportunity close date generating, field update workflow used 129-134 week number calculating, formula used 108-111 year and month values deriving, formula used 106-108 opportunity close date e-mail alert creating, workflow used 111-122 opportunity name setting, field update workflow used 122-128 opportunity page layout related approval history, adding 169 **Opportunity Sales Stages** displaying, on home page 34-41 organization location displaying, Google Map used 234-237 displaying, Visualforce page used 234-237 Google Map code, options 242 **Override With option 56** 

#### Ρ

PDF document

used, for generating help pages for custom

objects 177-180

Personal Setup link

creating, standard Custom Links on sidebar

used 7-9

prepopulated fields

Log A Call button, creating from accounts

89-94

productivity tools

for administration 173
for advanced users (superusers) 173

Protected Component option 11

#### R

Reason Lost field creating on opportunity, validation rule used 148-152
Record Editability Properties 162
REGEX
UK postcodes accuracy checking, by creating validation rule 145-147
US zip codes accuracy checking, by creating validation rule 143-145

# S

Salesforce historic year range populating from 1920 on calendar pop ups, for data fields 82-89 year range extending to 2025 on calendar pop ups, for data fields 76-82 salesforce.com images used, for displaying case priority flags 44-46 Salesforce CRM about 105 data quality, improving 137 Email to Salesforce, enabling 190-192 home tab 5, 6 Salesforce for Outlook configurations, setting up 196-203 Salesforce for Outlook configurations, setting within Salesforce CRM 196-203 software, configuring on local machine 213-220 software, installing on local machine 204-213 system requisites, obtaining 194, 195 Salesforce for Outlook software. See Salesforce for Outlook Salesforce opportunity ID 15 digits converting to 18 digits, formula field used 174-176 Send An Email button adding, on home page 29-33 Specify Initial Submitters page 164 Static Resources setup screen 177 Subject field 155 Submit for Approval button 170 synchronous call 186

# T

tabbed Account Detail page displaying, Visualforce used 57-61 Template Unique Name field 112 building 155 Training opening in new window from sidebar, Custom Links used 11-15 Treat blank fields as blanks option 52

two-letter account country code usage enforcing, validation rule used 140, 142

#### U

**UK postcodes accuracy** checking, by creating validation rule 145-147 **Understanding Custom Components Splash** screen 22 Unique Name field 133, 160, 165 user setting up, to be associated with approval process 156, 157 US zip codes accuracy checking, by creating validation rule 143-145 V

validation rule creating, to check Uk postcodes accuracy 145-147 creating, to check US zip codes accuracy 143-145 used, for creating Reason Lost field on opportunity 148-152 used for enforcing, two-letter account country code usage 140, 142 used for stopping account name change, by non-system administrators 138-140 Visualforce page, used for displaying organization location 234-237 page creating, steps for 66

used, for creating clutter-free Account tab 54-57

used, for displaying tabbed Account Detail page 57-61 used, for generating help pages for custom objects 177-180 used, for rendering Account credit score graphically 62-64

### W

### Web Tab

creating, to display external web application 228-233

week number

calculating for opportunity close date, formula used 108-111

Wide (Right) Column option 17, 22, 101 window.confirm() method 186 workflow

used, for creating opportunity close date e-mail alert 111-122

### Υ

year and month values deriving from opportunity close date, formula used 106-108 year range

extending to 2025 on calendar pop ups, for date fields 76-82 populating from 1920 on calendar pop ups, for date fields 82-89

# Ζ

zoom 242

249 -



# Thank you for buying Salesforce CRM Admin Cookbook

# **About Packt Publishing**

Packt, pronounced 'packed', published its first book "*Mastering phpMyAdmin for Effective MySQL Management*" in April 2004 and subsequently continued to specialize in publishing highly focused books on specific technologies and solutions.

Our books and publications share the experiences of your fellow IT professionals in adapting and customizing today's systems, applications, and frameworks. Our solution-based books give you the knowledge and power to customize the software and technologies you're using to get the job done. Packt books are more specific and less general than the IT books you have seen in the past. Our unique business model allows us to bring you more focused information, giving you more of what you need to know, and less of what you don't.

Packt is a modern, yet unique publishing company, which focuses on producing quality, cutting-edge books for communities of developers, administrators, and newbies alike. For more information, please visit our website: www.PacktPub.com.

# **About Packt Enterprise**

In 2010, Packt launched two new brands, Packt Enterprise and Packt Open Source, in order to continue its focus on specialization. This book is part of the Packt Enterprise brand, home to books published on enterprise software – software created by major vendors, including (but not limited to) IBM, Microsoft and Oracle, often for use in other corporations. Its titles will offer information relevant to a range of users of this software, including administrators, developers, architects, and end users.

# Writing for Packt

We welcome all inquiries from people who are interested in authoring. Book proposals should be sent to author@packtpub.com. If your book idea is still at an early stage and you would like to discuss it first before writing a formal book proposal, contact us; one of our commissioning editors will get in touch with you.

We're not just looking for published authors; if you have strong technical skills but no writing experience, our experienced editors can help you develop a writing career, or simply get some additional reward for your expertise.





# Salesforce CRM: The Definitive Admin Handbook

ISBN: 978-1-849683-06-7

Paperback: 376 pages

A comprehensive, power-packed guide for all Saleforce Administrators covering everything from setup and configuration to the customization of Salesforce CRM

- 1. Get to grips with tips, tricks, best-practice administration principles, and critical design considerations for setting up and customizing Salesforce CRM with this book and e-book
- 2. Master the mechanisms for controlling access to, and the quality of, data and information sharing



# Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Administration Cookbook

ISBN: 978-1-849681-44-5 Paperback: 468 pages

Over 70 practical recipes for administering a high-performance SQL Server 2008 R2 system

- 1. Provides Advanced Administration techniques for SQL Server 2008 R2 as a book or eBook
- 2. Covers the essential Manageability, Programmability, and Security features
- 3. Emphasizes important High Availability features and implementation
- 4. Explains how to maintain and manage the SQL Server data platform effectively

Please check www.PacktPub.com for information on our titles





# **Using CiviCRM**

ISBN: 978-1-849512-26-8

Paperback: 464 pages

Over 60 recipes to create rich Internet applications with many exciting features

- 1. Build a CRM that conforms to your needs from the ground up with all of the features that you want
- 2. Develop an integrated online system that handles contacts, donations, event registration, bulk e-mailing, case management and other functions such as activity tracking, grants, reporting, and analytics
- 3. Integrate CiviCRM with Drupal and Joomla!
- 4. Build solutions from the ground up with the help of easy-to-understand steps from practical use-case scenarios.



# Implementing SugarCRM 5.x

ISBN: 978-1-847198-66-2

Paperback: 352 pages

Install, configure, and administer a robust Customer Relationship Management system using SugarCRM

- 1. Analyze and weigh deployment options based on your needs and resources
- 2. A brief overview of the benefits of SugarCRM 6.0
- 3. Review powerful built-in customization tools and popular third-party enhancements for your SugarCRM system
- 4. Learn about on-going maintenance needs such as backups and user management

Please check www.PacktPub.com for information on our titles